



# ŠKODA Citigo Owner's Manual



# Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

#### Chapters, table of contents and subject index

The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

#### Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

#### Units of measurement

All values are expressed in metric units.

#### **Explanation of symbols**

- $\ensuremath{\square}$  Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
- Denotes the end of a section.
- Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
- Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Denotes a registered trademark.

#### Notes

## WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

### - CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.



### For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.



#### Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.

## Documentation for date of delivery

			/			/								
			Veh	icle	iden	tifica	ation	nun	nber					
														_
					×									
		S	tam	: p an	SKOE d sia	)A pa natu	artne ire of	er f the	selle	5L				
I confirm thation, have b warranty ha	een sł	nowr	n hov	w to	oper	ate	e spi it cor	ecifie rectl	ed ve y, ar	hicle nd the	in g e teri	ood ms d	cond of the	di-

ŠKODA extended warranty Stamp of ŠKODA partner Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty<sup>a)</sup> Years: ОГ Valid from:

a) (Whichever comes first).

### **Preface**

### You have opted for a ŠKODA - our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

Observe the national legal requirements when using your vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We wish you much pleasure with your ŠKODA and pleasant motoring at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

#### Terms used

The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

- "Specialist garage" a company that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA partner, a ŠKODA service partner, as well as an independent workshop.
- "ŠKODA service partner" A Workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.
- "ŠKODA partner" A company that has been authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

#### Owner's Manual

These operating instructions apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **models**.

This owner's manual describes all possible equipment variants without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, this vehicle does not need to contain all of the equipment components described in this owner's manual.

The level of equipment of your vehicle refers to your purchase contract of the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner from whom you bought the vehicle.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

#### Useful equipment Airbag system Table of Contents Storage compartments \_\_\_\_\_ 53 Description of the airbag system 98 Airbag overview \_\_\_\_\_ Heating and air-conditioning Materials defect liability and ŠKODA warranty for Deactivating airbags 101 Heating, ventilation and cooling \_\_\_\_\_ new cars \_\_\_\_\_ Heating Transporting children safely \_\_\_\_\_\_ 103 Mobility warranty and ŠKODA extended Air conditioning system \_\_\_\_\_ Child seat \_\_\_\_\_\_ 103 warranty. Fastening systems 105 Communication and multimedia \_\_\_\_\_ Telephone and Move & Fun **Abbreviations General Maintenance** Drivina Vehicle care \_\_\_\_\_ Using the system Service intervals 108 Starting-off and Driving Modifications, adjustments and technical Cockpit \_\_\_\_\_ Steering \_\_\_\_\_ alterations \_\_\_\_\_\_ 110 Overview Starting and stopping the engine \_\_\_\_\_\_ 67 Washing your car \_\_\_\_\_\_ 113 Brakes 68 warning lights and instruments \_\_\_\_\_ Taking care of your vehicle exterior \_\_\_\_\_\_ 115 Instrument cluster Taking care of the interior \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 118 Automated transmission \_\_\_\_\_ Multifunction display (MFA) Running in \_\_\_\_\_ Inspecting and replenishing \_\_\_\_\_\_ 122 Warning lights \_\_\_\_\_ 16 Economical driving and environmental Unlocking and locking sustainability \_\_\_\_\_\_ 74 Vehicles with CNG (compressed natural gas) Unlocking and locking \_\_\_\_\_\_ 22 Avoiding damage to your vehicle \_\_\_\_\_\_ 78 mode \_\_\_\_\_\_ 123 Central locking system \_\_\_\_\_ Engine compartment \_\_\_\_\_\_ 127 Remote control Engine oil 130 Assist systems \_\_\_\_\_\_ 80 Luggage compartment lid \_\_\_\_\_\_ 28 Coolant 132 Brake assist systems \_\_\_\_\_\_ 80 Electrical power windows \_\_\_\_\_\_ 30 Brake fluid 133 Parking aid \_\_\_\_\_\_ 81 Power sliding/tilting roof \_\_\_\_\_\_ 31 Vehicle battery \_\_\_\_\_\_ 134 Cruise Control System \_\_\_\_\_\_ 83 Lights and visibility START-STOP \_\_\_\_\_\_ 85 Wheels 138 Lights 33 Tyres and wheel rims 138 City Safe Drive \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 86 Indoor Lighting \_\_\_\_\_ Winter operation \_\_\_\_\_\_ 143 Visibility \_\_\_\_\_\_ 37 Safety Windscreen wipers and washers \_\_\_\_\_\_ 38 Do-it-yourself Rear mirror 40 Passive Safety

General information \_\_\_\_\_\_

Seat belts

Using seat belts \_\_\_\_\_

Correct seated position \_\_\_\_\_\_ 91

Inertia reels and belt tensioners 96

Seats and stowing \_\_\_\_\_\_ 42

Front seats \_\_\_\_\_

Rear seats

Luggage compartment \_\_\_\_\_\_ 46

Roof rack system \_\_\_\_\_\_ 49

	_	
Table	of	Contents

Emergency equipment and self-help \_\_\_\_\_\_ 144

Emergency equipment \_\_\_\_\_\_ 144

Changing a wheel \_\_\_\_\_\_ 145

Tyre repair \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 148

Jump-starting Towing the vehicle	
Fuses and light bulbs Fuses Bulbs	15
Technical data	
Technical data	
Index	

# Materials defect liability and ŠKODA warranty for new cars

#### Materials defect liability

Your ŠKODA partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

### ŠKODA warranty for new cars

As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the terms described later.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will guarantee the following services:

- Repair of damage to your vehicle that occurs within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty;
- Repair of paint damage to your vehicle that occurs within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty;
- Repair of rust perforation to the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only rust perforation on the inside and the outside of body sheets is included in the rust perforation to bodywork definition and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of the warranty is the date on which the original purchaser acquires the vehicle upon purchasing it from the ŠKODA partner or the date of first registration. Whichever one occurs first and is recorded by the ŠKODA partner in the service schedule accordingly is the one that applies.

Repairs may either occur by replacing the faulty part or by restoring it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA service partner.

There are no other entitlements arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there are no entitlements for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA partner in a country of the European Economic Area (i.e. the countries of the European Union, Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein) or in Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA service partner in one of these countries.

If your ŠKODA vehicle has been purchased from a ŠKODA partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA service partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland.

One of the conditions of a service from the ŠKODA guarantee is that you have carried out all service works in a timely and adequate manner and in accordance with the manufacturer's provisions. You must prove that service works have been carried out properly and in accordance with the manufacturer's provisions when raising a claim from the ŠKODA warranty. In case of a missed service or in case of a failure to carry out a service according to the manufacturer's provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the manufacturer's provisions was not the cause of the defect.

Natural wear and tear of your vehicle is not covered by the ŠKODA warranty. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover defects to bodywork, installations and conversions provided by third-parties, nor vehicle defects caused by these. The same goes for accessories which are not factory installed and/or delivered.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the defect was caused by one of the following:

- > unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance, or unapproved modification to your vehicle:
- Non-compliance with provisions in the service schedule and the Owner's manual or other factory-supplied instructions;
- > External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding, etc.);
- > parts fitted or installed on the vehicle, whose use is not approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s., or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (e.g. tuning);
- > damage caused by you which was not immediately seen to by specialist garage or was not fixed properly.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that it was not the cause.

This ŠKODA guarantee does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from liability to defects from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

# Mobility warranty and ŠKODA extended warranty.

#### Mobility warranty

Mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

Should your car break down when you're on the move one day as a result of an unexpected fault, you will be eligible for services to ensure your continued mobility as part of the mobility warranty, which includes the following: Breakdown service at the breakdown location and towing off to the ŠKODA service partner, technical assistance by phone or on-site operation.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA service partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train, etc.), a courtesy vehicle, etc.

You can obtain more information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of mobility warranty for your vehicle from your ŠKODA partner. Here you will also be given detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage available for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA service partner about the possibility of a subsequent agreement.



#### Note

The mobility quarantee is only available for some countries.

#### Optional ŠKODA extended warranty

If you received an extended ŠKODA warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty for damages to your ŠKODA vehicle will be extended by the time you chose or until the chosen mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The previously mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against rust perforation stay unaffected by the extended warranty.

Detailed conditions for the extended warranty are included in the extended warranty terms and conditions, which your ŠKODA partner will have given to you upon purchasing your new vehicle.



#### Note

The mobility guarantee and optional ŠKODA extended warranty are only available for some countries.

## **Abbreviations**

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ASG	Automated transmission
CNG	Compressed natural gas
CO <sub>2</sub> in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometre
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
EU	European Union
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MG	Manual gearbox
MFD	Multifunction display
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TCS	Traction control

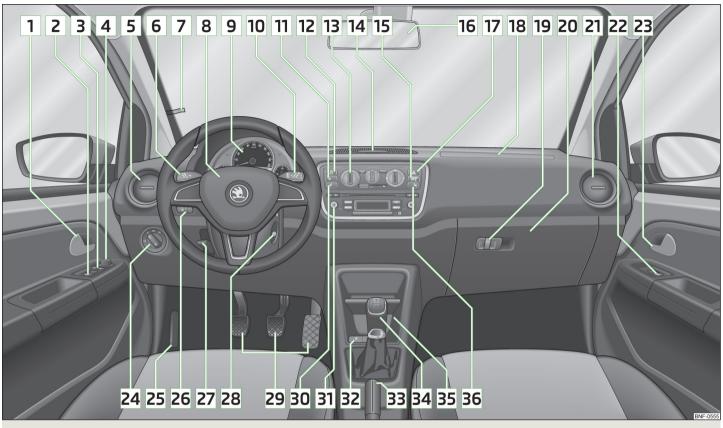


Fig. 1 Cockpit

## Using the system

## Cockpit

### Overview

1	Door opening lever	2
2	Electrical power window in the driver's door	31
3	•	2
	Central locking system	4
4	Electric exterior mirror adjustment	
5	Air outlet vent	5
6	Operating lever:	_
	> Turn signal lights and main beam, headlight flasher	3 <sup>,</sup> 8
	> Speed regulating system	
7	Parking ticket holder	5
8	Steering wheel:	
	> With horn	9
	> With driver's front airbag	11
9	Instrument cluster: Instruments and warning lights	- 11
10	Operating lever:	1
	Multifunction display      Windscreen wiper and wash system	3
11	Button for rear window heater	3
12	START-STOP button	8
		0
13	Depending on equipment fitted:	5
	<ul> <li>Operating controls for the heating</li> <li>Operating controls for the air conditioning system</li> </ul>	5
14	Socket for the cradle for the Move & Funmultifunction device.	6
15		10
=	Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag	41
16	Interior rear-view mirror	•
17	Button for hazard warning light system	3
18	Front passenger airbag	9
19	Bag holder	5
20	Storage compartment on the front passenger side	5
21	Air outlet vent	5

22	Power window in the front passenger door
	Door opening lever
23 24	Light switch
25	Bonnet release lever
26	Regulator for headlamp beam adjustment for the headlights
27	Lever for adjusting the steering wheel
28	Ignition lock
29	Pedals
30	Regulator for left seat heating
	Radio
31 32 33	Button for City Safe Drive system
33	Handbrake lever
34	Depending on equipment fitted:
	> Gearshift lever (manual gearbox)
	> Selector lever (automated gearbox)
35	Storage compartment
36	Regulator for right seat heating

### Note

- Cars with factory-fitted radio are supplied with separate instructions for operating such equipment.
- The arrangement of the controls and switches and the location of some items
  on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » Fig. 1. The symbols on
  the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

### warning lights and instruments

### Instrument cluster

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview	10
Speedometer	11
Fuel gauge	
Engine revolutions counter	11
Counter for distance driven	12
Service Interval Display	
Recommended gear	12

### WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Never operate the controls in the instrument cluster while driving, only when the vehicle is stationary!

### Overview



Fig. 2 Instrument cluster - Version 1



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster - Version 2



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1.0 on page 10.

- 1 Speedometer » page 11
- 2 Display:
  - > With counter for distance driven » page 12
  - > with outside temperature display » page 14

- > With service interval display » page 12
- > With multifunction display » page 13
- > with fuel reserve gauge (option 1 only) » page 11
- Reset button for the display of the daily trip counter (trip) » page 12
- 4 Fuel gauge » page 11
- 5 Engine revolutions counter » page 11
- 6 Adjust button for the clock » page 14

### Speedometer



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

The speed is shown in km/h or mph and km/h depending on the vehicle.

### Fuel gauge

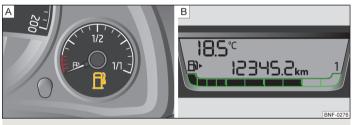


Fig. 4 Fuel gauge



Fig. 5 Fuel gauge - CNG



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

#### Vehicles running on petrol

The fuel gauge » Fig. 4 only operates if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 35 litres. If the fuel gauge in the fuel tank reaches the reserve capacity level, the warning symbol of  $\bigcirc$  on  $\nearrow$  Fig. 4 -  $\bigcirc$  will appear in the instrument cluster or the symbol  $\bigcirc$  will flash for 10 seconds together with the remaining segments in the instrument cluster display  $\nearrow$  Fig. 4 -  $\bigcirc$ . There are now about 4 litres of fuel remaining in the tank.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

#### Vehicles running on CNG (compressed natural gas)

The fuel gauge » Fig. 5 only operates if the ignition is switched on.

When the vehicle runs on petrol, the pointer of the fuel gauge is in the range  $\boxed{1}$  » Fig. 5. When the vehicle runs on CNG, the pointer of the fuel gauge is in the range  $\boxed{2}$ .

If the fuel level in the fuel tank reaches the reserve area for **petrol**, the warning light  $\bigcirc$  goes on. The pointer is in the **red** range of the gauge  $\boxed{1}$  » Fig. 5. There are now about 5 l of fuel remaining in the tank.

If the fuel level in the fuel tank for **CNG** reaches the reserve area, the indicator lights  $\frac{1}{2}$  up. The pointer is in the **red** range of the gauge  $\boxed{2}$  » Fig. 5. There are now about 1.5 kg of fuel remaining in the tank.

### CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

### **Engine revolutions counter**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ... on page 10.

The red scale of the rev counter  $\boxed{\mathbf{5}}$  » Fig. 3 on page 10 indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed. The system automatically restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

Before reaching the red zone of the rev counter scale, shift up into the next higher gear.

Follow the recommended gear to prevent engine speeds that are too high or too low » page 12.

Avoid high engine speeds during the running-in period and before the engine has warmed up to the operating temperature .



#### For the sake of the environment

Correct shifting up has the following advantages.

- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

#### Counter for distance driven



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

To toggle between the odometer and the daily trip counter, briefly press the button  $\boxed{\bf 3}$  » Fig. 2 on page 10 or » Fig. 3 on page 10 .

#### Daily trip counter (trip)

The daily trip counter indicates the distance which you have driven since it was last reset - in steps of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

#### Reset trip counter for the distance driven

> Press and hold the 3 » Fig. 2 on page 10 or » Fig. 3 on page 10 button.

#### Odometer

The odometer indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

### Service Interval Display



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

Before the next service interval, the message InSP appears in the instrument cluster display for some seconds and the remaining kilometres are indicated after switching on the ignition.

At the time of the service, an acoustic signal will sound and the message ln P appears for a few seconds after switching on the ignition.

### П

- Note
- Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. This work is carried out by a specialist garage.
- For more information on the service intervals » page 108, Service intervals.

### Recommended gear



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

An information for the engaged gear is shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

Show	Importance
•	Optimal gear.
1	Recommends that you shift to a higher gear.
1	Recommends that you shift to a lower gear.

### 1

### CAUTION

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

### Multifunction display (MFA)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Memory	13
Operation	14
Digital clock	14
Multifunction display details	14
Warning against excessive speeds	15

### The driving data is displayed on the multifunction display.

The multifunction display can only be operated when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition.

### WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! You should therefore not only rely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

### i Note

In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.

### Memory



Fig. 6
Multi-function display - Display
example of the memory



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 13.

The multifunction display is equipped with two automatic memories,  ${\bf 1}$  and  ${\bf 2}$ . The selected memory is shown in the Display » Fig. 6.

Exchange between memories is made with the  ${\bf B}$  button on the wiper stalk » Fig. 7 on page 14.

#### Single-trip memory (memory 1)

The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued within 2 hours after switching off the ignition. If the trip is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory is automatically erased.

#### Total-trip memory (memory 2)

The total distance driven memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes driving or 1,999 kilometres driven. The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

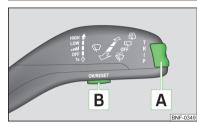
Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.



### Note

All information in the memory 1 and 2 is erased if the battery of the vehicle is disconnected.

### Operation



Fia. 7 Buttons on the control lever



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 13.

The Toggle button for selecting menu items A and B are located on the control button on the wiper stalk » Fig. 7.

#### Select menu items

> Briefly press the rocker switch A » Fig. 7 up or down. This opens the individual functions of the multifunction display one after the other.

#### Select memory

> Press the button B » Fig. 7.

#### Reset memory

- > Select the desired memory.
- > Press the button B » Fig. 7 longer.

With the B button, the following values of the selected memory are set to zero.

- > Average fuel consumption
- > Distance travelled
- > Average speed
- > Driving time

### Digital clock



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings III on page 13.

The time is set as follows:

- > Press the rocker switch A » Fig. 7 on page 14 up or down to change the display of the time.
- > Press the button 6 > Fig. 3 on page 10 to select the hour display so that it flashes.
- > Press button 3 to continue setting the time. Keep the button pressed to run through the numbers quickly.
- > Press the button 6 to select the minutes display so that it flashes.
- > Press button 3 to continue setting the time. Keep the button pressed to run through the numbers quickly.
- > Confirm the set value by pressing the button 6 again, or wait for around 5 seconds. The setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

### Multifunction display details



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔢 on page 13.

#### Outside temperature

The current outside temperature is displayed.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C, the temperature indicator appears and a snow flake symbol & (black ice warning) flashes for a few seconds, then remains displayed together with the outside temperature.

### Driving time

The driving time which has elapsed since the memory was last erased appears in the display. If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time, reset the memory to zero at that point in time » page 13.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

#### Current fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption level is displayed in litres/100 km<sup>3</sup>. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed2.

#### Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is displayed in litres/100 km<sup>1)</sup>.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » page 13. After erasing the memory, no value is displayed until you have driven approx. 300 m.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

#### Range

The estimated range is displayed in kilometres. It indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the warning light for the fuel reserve the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the information. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

#### Distance travelled

The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed » page 13. If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time, reset the memory to zero at that moment in time » page 13.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1999 km. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

#### Average speed

The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour. To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » page 13.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

#### Current speed

The current speed, which is identical to the display of the speedometer  $\boxed{1}$  » Fig. 3 on page 10 is displayed.

#### Coolant temperature

The current outside temperature is displayed.

#### Warning against excessive speeds

The warning that the speed limit is being exceeded can be enabled / disabled » page 15, Warning against excessive speeds in the display.

### Warning against excessive speeds



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1. on page 13.

### Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

- > With button A > Fig. 7 on page 14 choose the menu point → Warning against excessive speeds.
- > Press the button B to activate the ability to set the speed limit (value flashes).
- > Use the button A to set the required speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
- > Confirm the speed limit that was set with button B, or wait approx. 5 seconds until the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

This allows you to set the speed in 5 km/h intervals.

### Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

- > Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
- > Press button B to accept the current speed as the speed limit (the value flashes).

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

After erasing this data, no value appears in the display until you have driven approx.  $300\ m.$ 

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1)</sup> On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.

<sup>2)</sup> On some models in certain countries, the display appears in --,- kilometres/litres if the vehicle is stationary.

> Confirm the speed limit that was set by pressing button B again, or wait approx. 5 seconds until the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashina).

#### Change or delete speed limit

- > With button A » Fig. 7 on page 14 choose the menu point ⊕ Warning against excessive speeds.
- > Pressing button B deletes the speed limit.
- > Pressing the button B activates the ability to change the speed limit.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. At the same time the message (warning against excessive speed) appears on the display with the set limit value.

The set driving mode remains stored even after switching the ignition on and off.

### Warning lights

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

(D) Handbrake	16
Braking system	16
# Seat belt warning light	17
🗂 Generator	17
≝ Engine oil	17
	18
© © Power steering	18
🗦 Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	18
Traction Control System (TC)	19
Antilock brake system (ABS)	19
OF The rear fog light	19
Exhaust inspection system	19
EPC EPC fault light	19
Airbag system	20
O O S Automated transmission	20
↓ ⇒ Turn signal system	20
™ Cruise control system	21
■ Main heam	21

ে Safety belt (belt status display) - rear seat	_ 21
City Safe Drive	_ 21
START STOP	_ 21

The warning lights show certain functions/faults and may be accompanied by audible signals.

#### WARNING

- If illuminated warning lights and the corresponding descriptions and warning notes are not observed, this may result in severe injuries or major vehicle damage.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. There is a risk of injuries, scalding, accidents and fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. inspecting and replenishing oil and other fluids. It is essential to observe safety notes » page 127, Engine compartment.

### (P) Handbrake



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings III on page 16.

The warning light (9) comes on if the handbrake is applied. An audible warning is also given if you drive the vehicle for at least 3 seconds at a speed of more than 6 km/h.

### (1) Braking system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🖪 on page 16.

The warning light (1) illuminates if the brake fluid level is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 133.

Further information » page 68.

### WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 36.
- The following guidelines should be observed when opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level » page 127, Engine compartment.
- If the warning light (1) is displayed simultaneously with warning light (ABS), a do not continue your journey! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance!

### Seat belt warning light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🚺 on page 16.

The warning light 4 comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten the seat belt. The warning light only goes out if the driver or front passenger has fastened his seat belt.

If the seat belt has not been fastened by the driver or front passenger, a permanent warning signal sounds at vehicle speeds greater than 25 km/h and simultaneously the warning light & flashes.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next 90 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light & lights up permanently.

Further information » page 94, Seat belts.

### Generator



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 16.

If the warning light lights up 🗂 when the engine is running, the vehicle battery is not being charged.

Seek help from a specialist garage. The electrical system requires checking.

### WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights » page 36.

### CAUTION

If the warning light  $\frac{1}{2}$  (cooling system fault) comes on in addition to the warning light in the display when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and switch the engine off - risk of engine damage!

### 🕁 Engine oil



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 16.

When the indicator light is flashing , the engine oil pressure is too low.

The warning light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

Stop the vehicle and switch the engine off if the warning light does not go off after the engine has started or flashes while driving. Check the oil level and top up with engine oil if necessary » page 131, Checking the oil level.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the prevailing conditions. This can cause serious engine damage. Therefore, switch the engine off and seek help from a specialist garage.

Even if the oil level is correct, to do not drive any further if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 36, Hazard warning light system.

### CAUTION

The red oil pressure light  $\leadsto$  is not an oil level indicator! One should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, preferably after every refuelling stop.

### ♣ Coolant



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 16.

The warning light  $\mbox{\ensuremath{\rlap/}{\perp}}$  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light  $\frac{1}{2}$  lights up or flashes, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

An audible signal sounds as a warning tone.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, check the level of the coolant » page 132, and refill the coolant if necessary » page 133.

**Do not continue your journey** if for some reason it is not possible to top up the coolant under the prevailing conditions. This can cause serious engine damage. Therefore, **switch the engine off** and seek help from a specialist garage.

If the coolant is within the specified range, the increased temperature may be caused by an operating problem at the radiator fan. Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » page 156, Fuses in the engine compartment.

Do not continue driving if the warning light  $\pm$  @ does not go off even though the coolant level is correct and the fuse for the fan is in working order!

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### **WARNING**

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights » page 36.

### 😠 😡 Power steering



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 16.

The warning light  $\ensuremath{\mathbb{\Theta}}$  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the warning light after switching on the ignition or when driving lights up continuously, a fault exists in the electromechanical power steering.

- If the yellow warning light lights up 6, this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.
- If the red warning light lights up , this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces).

Further information » page 66.

### i Note

- If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the yellow warning light @ comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

### 🤰 Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 16.

The warning light flashes \$\mathcal{2}\$ to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light  $\beta$  lights up, there is a fault in the ESC.

As the ESC operates in conjunction with the ABS, the ESP warning light will also come on if the ABS system fails.

If the warning light  $\stackrel{?}{\sim}$  comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ESC can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the ESC can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the ESC is fully functional again.

Further information » page 80, Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

### Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light 🚊 comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

### Traction Control System (TC)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings III on page 16.

The warning light to comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched οn

The warning light comes on when driving when a control cycle is activated.

The warning light illuminates permanently if there is a fault in the TCS.

The fact that the TCS operates together with the ABS means that the TCS warning light will also come on if the ABS system is not operating properly.

If the warning light (c) comes on immediately after starting the engine, the TCS can be switched off for technical reasons. In this case, the TCS can be switched on again by switching the ignition on and off. If the warning light goes out, the TCS is fully functional again.

Further information » page 81, Traction Control System (TCS).

### Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

### Antilock brake system (ABS)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🚺 on page 16.

If the warning light (i) lights up, there is a fault in the ABS.

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Further information » page 81. Antilock Braking System (ABS).

### WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 36.
- If the warning light () » page 16 is displayed simultaneously with the ABS warning light (a), (a) do not continue your journey! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The following guidelines should be observed when opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level » page 127. Engine compartment.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - risk of accident!

### The rear foo light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 16.

The warning light of comes on when the rear fog lights are operating page 35.

### **Exhaust inspection system**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 16.

If the warning light  $\bigcirc$  lights up, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### **EPC** fault light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings III on page 16.

If the warning light PC lights up, there is a fault in the engine control. The engine control unit allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### Airbaa system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings III on page 16.

#### Monitoring the airbag system

The warning light  $\gtrsim$  comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched

There is a fault in the system if the warning light does not go out or flashes while driving » []. This also applies if the warning light does not come on when the ignition is switched on.

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

The following situation applies if the front or side airbag or belt tensioner have been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

The warning light # lights up for around 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes approximately another 12 seconds in 2 second intervals.

The following situation applies if the airbag has been switched off using the key switch for the airbag in the front passenger storage compartment:

- The warning light % comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on:
- > The deactivated airbag is indicated by the illumination of the warning light PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF % in the middle of the dash panel » page 102, Deactivating the front passenaer airbaa.

### WARNING

If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk that the airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident.

#### **Automated transmission** 0 0 0



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 16.

#### Warning light ()

Do not continue your journey if the warning light  $\odot$  lights up and an acoustic signal sounds. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

#### Warning light ()

If the warning light  $\odot$  lights up and no gear can be selected, switch the ignition on and off. If the warning light lights up after you switch on the ignition, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

If the warning light  $\odot$  or warning light  $\odot$  lights up and an acoustic signal sounds. this means that the automatic gearbox has overheated. Stop and allow the transmission to cool down or drive more quickly than 20 km/h (12 mph).

If the warning light  $\bigcirc$  lights up again, switch off the vehicle, shut off the engine and allow the gearbox to cool down.

#### Warning light (S)

If the warning light (S) lights up, operate the brake pedal.

#### Warning light 🥞

If the warning light \$\mathscr{Q}\$ lights up, operate the handbrake.

Further information » page 71, Automated transmission.

### WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning lights » page 36.

### 🗘 🖒 Turn signal system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🖪 on page 16.

Either the left  $\Leftrightarrow$  or right  $\Leftrightarrow$  warning light flashes depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If a turn signal light fails, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Further information » page 34, Turn signal and main beam.

### n Cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 16.

The warning light to comes on when the cruise control is operating » page 83.

### **■ Main beam**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 16.

The warning light To comes on when the main beam or headlight flasher are selected » page 33.

### غُارِ Safety belt (belt status display) - rear seat

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 16.

After switching on the ignition, the belt status warning lights up for the rear seats in the instrument panel display for 30 seconds and indicates whether any rear seat passengers have fastened their seat belts. The belt status indicator will then light up when the passenger on the rear seat fastens or unfastens the seat belt (when the ignition is switched on or during the iourney).

If the warning light  $\clubsuit$ , is switched on, the passenger on the rear seat has their seat belt on.

If the warning light  $\underline{\circ}$ , is switched on, the passenger on the rear seat does **not** have their seat belt on.

If a seat belt is unfastened on the rear seat during the journey at a speed of more than 25 km/h, an acoustic signal will sound, and the belt status indicator for the rear seats will flash for around 30 seconds.

Further information » page 94, Seat belts.

### **魚 City Safe Drive**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 16.

If the City Safe Drive system is currently slowing the vehicle down automatically, the warning light will flash 魚 quickly.

If the City Safe Drive system is not currently available, or if there is a system fault, the warning light will flash  $\mathbb{A}$  slowly.

When the City Safe Drive system is switched off while the vehicle is travelling at a speed between 5-30 km/h (3-19 mph), the warning light **@ 0ff** will light up in the instrument cluster display.

If the City Safe Drive system is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster display 点 **0n** will light up for around 5 seconds.

Further information » page 86, City Safe Drive.

### (A) START STOP

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 16.

If the START STOP system is active, the warning light will light up  $\ensuremath{\mathbb{A}}.$ 

If the START STOP system is active, but automatic engine shut down is not possible, the warning light will light up  $\mathscr{B}$ .

When the warning light flashes (A) the START STOP system will not be available. Further information » page 85, START-STOP.

### Unlocking and locking

### **Unlocking and locking**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle key	22
Replacing the battery in the remote control key	23
Child safety lock	23
Opening/closing a door	24
Door opening lever	24
Emergency locking of the doors	25

### Vehicle key

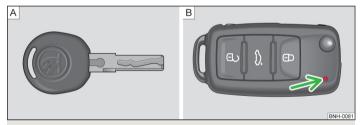


Fig. 8 Key: without/with remote control



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 22.

Two keys are provided with the vehicle » Fig. 8.

- A Keys without remote control
- B Keys with remote control (remote control keys)

### WARNING

- Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) risk of injury!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally risk of accident!

### CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The function of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters located near the vehicle that operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phones, television transmitters).
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking does react to the remote control at less than around 3 metres away » page 23.

### Note

If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to provide you with a new one.

### Replacing the battery in the remote control key

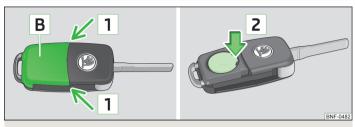


Fig. 9 Remote control key: Remove cover/remove battery



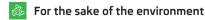
#### First read and observe the introductory information given on page 22.

Each remote control key contains a battery which is housed under the cover  $\boxed{\textbf{B}}$  » Fig. 9. The battery needs replacing if red indicator light » Fig. 8 on page 22 -  $\boxed{\textbf{B}}$  does not go on when you press a button on the remote control key. We recommend having the key batteries replaced by a specialist garage. However, if you would like to replace the discharged battery yourself proceed as follows.

- > Flip out the key.
- > Press off the battery cover with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of arrows [1] » Fig. 9.
- > Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery downwards in the region of arrow 2.
- Insert the new battery. Ensure that the "+" symbol on the battery is facing upwards. The correct polarity is shown on the battery cover.
- > Place the battery cover on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

### CAUTION

- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.
- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.



Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

### i

#### Note

- The system has to be synchronised, if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 28.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

### Child safety lock



Fig. 10 Parental Control: Left rear door



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 22.

The child safety lock prevents the corresponding rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

#### Switching on

> Turn the slot of the safety lock in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 10 (mirror-inverted on the right doors).

#### Switching off

> Turn the slot of the safety lock in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 10 (mirror-inverted on the right door).

### Opening/closing a door



Fig. 11 Door handle/door opening lever:



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 22.

### Opening from the outside

• Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A » Fig. 11 on the door you wish to open.

### Opening from the inside

> Pull on door opening lever B of the respective door and push the door away from you.

### Closing from the inside

> Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

### WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline risk of injury!

### Door opening lever

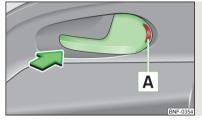


Fig. 12 **Door opening lever** 



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 22.

On vehicles without central locking, you can lock and unlock doors which do not have a locking cylinder from the inside.

#### Locking

> Push the door opening lever in the direction of the arrow so that the red marking  $\boxed{\bf A}$  >> Fig. 12 is visible.

#### Unlocking

> Open the door by pulling the door opening lever once against the direction of the arrow  $\gg$  Fig. 12 .

### **Emergency locking of the doors**

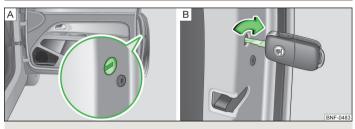


Fig. 13 Emergency locking of the door



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 22.

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the front of the doors that have no locking cylinder » Fig. 13 - A, this mechanism is only visible after opening the door.

#### Lockina

Insert the key into the slot » Fig. 13 - A and turn it in the horizontal position at the right door arrow » Fig. 13 - B in the arrow direction and turn against the arrow direction with the left door.

After closing the door, it no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be unlocked from the inside by pulling on the door handle again, and then opened from the outside.

### Central locking system

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Safe securing system	26
Unlocking the vehicle using the key	26
Locking the vehicle with the key	26
Vehicle locking/unlocking from the inside	27

In setting up and locking, **all** doors are unlocked or locked together by the central locking system. The boot lid is unlocked. The luggage compartment lid can then be opened by pressing the button.

### Automatic locking and unlocking

All the doors and the luggage compartment lid are locked automatically once the car reaches a speed of about 15 km/h.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. It is also possible for the driver to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button.

The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

Automatic locking and unlocking can be activated by a specialist garage on request.

## Ţ

### WARNING

Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings. They do, however, make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!



#### Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- In case the key fails to operate the central locking, only the driver's door can be unlocked or locked. The other doors and the tailgate can be manually locked or unlocked.
- Emergency locking of the door » page 25.
- Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid » page 29.

### Safe securing system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 25.

The central locking system is equipped with a **safe securing system**. The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals. It is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside. This acts as an effective deterrent against attempts to break into your vehicle.

The safe securing system can be deactivated within 2 seconds by double locking the vehicle.

If the safe securing system is not operating, the warning light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash evenly at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

The safe securing system is activated again the next time the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is deactivated, the door can be opened from the inside by a single pull on opening lever of the respective door.

### I W

### **WARNING**

If the vehicle is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the vehicle as it is then no longer possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!



#### Note

You will be informed that the safe securing system has been activated after the vehicle has been locked by means of the message **SAFE LOCK** on the instrument cluster display.

### Unlocking the vehicle using the key

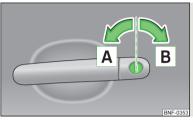


Fig. 14 Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

- > Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of travel (unlocking position) A >> Fig. 14.
- > Pull the door handle and open the door.
- > All the doors are unlocked.
- > The luggage compartment lid is then unlocked.
- > The switched on interior lights come on over the door contact.
- > The safe securing system is deactivated.

### Locking the vehicle with the key



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 25.

- > Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the opposite direction of travel (lock position) B >> Fig. 14 on page 26.
- > All the doors and the luggage compartment lid are locked.
- > The switched on interior lights will switch off over the door contact.
- > The safe securing system is immediately activated.
- > The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.

### i

#### Note

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

### Vehicle locking/unlocking from the inside



Fig. 15 **Central locking button** 



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, you can also unlock or lock it with the button » Fig. 15, even without the ignition being switched on.

#### Locking

> Press the symbol ⊕ » Fig. 15 key.

#### Unlocking

> Press the symbol ∂ key.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.

- > It is not possible to open the doors or the luggage compartment lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
- If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

### WARNING

- The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off. Children should never be left unattended in the vehicle since it is difficult to provide assistance from the outside when the doors are locked.
- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency risk to life!



#### Note

If the safe securing system is activated » page 26, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

#### Remote control

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

 Unlocking / locking
 28

 Synchronization
 28

With the remote control key, the vehicle can be locked or unlocked and the boot lid unlocked.

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle. The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

If a lost key is replaced or if the receiver unit has been repaired or replaced, the system must be initialised by a specialist garage. Only then can the remote control key be used again.



#### Note

- $\blacksquare$  The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than 3 metres away » page 23.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.

### Unlocking / locking



Fig. 16
Remote control key



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 27.

Explanation of graphic

- A Folding out/folding up of the key bit
- B Warning light

#### Unlocking

The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked. If the vehicle is unlocked using button 1 and none of the doors or the luggage compartment lid are opened within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again and the safe securing system is reactivated. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

#### Locking

The turn signal lights flash once to confirm that the vehicle has been correctly locked.

If the doors or the luggage compartment lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

### WARNING

If the car is locked from the outside and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

### i

#### Note

Only operate the remote control when the doors and luggage compartment lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.

#### **Synchronization**



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 27.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key was replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

- > Press any button on the remote control key.
- Pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

### Luggage compartment lid

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/opening and closing	29
Automatic locking	29
Emergency unlocking	29

### WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, the luggage compartment lid might open suddenly while driving, even if the luggage compartment lid lock was closed risk of accident!
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, as otherwise this could crack risk of injury!

#### Note

A closed, but not locked luggage compartment lid is locked automatically when driving off, or when travelling at speeds greater than about 9 km/h. It is unlocked again after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

### Unlocking/opening and closing



Fig. 17 Luggage compartment lid



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 28.

#### Unlocking in vehicles without remote control

> Unlock the driver's door with the vehicle key » page 26.

### Unlocking in vehicles with remote control

> Press the symbol button ⊕ in the car key.

#### Unlocking with the remote control key

> Press the symbol button ← in the vehicle key until the luggage compartment lid unlocks.

#### Opening

> Open the luggage compartment lid by pressing the » Fig. 17 - A button.

- > Reach into the recesses » Fig. 17 B and pull the luggage compartment lid down.
- > Close the lid with a slight swing.

### Automatic locking



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 28.

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is immediately locked automatically when closed.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

#### Delayed locking

If the trunk lid was locked using the symbol  $\Leftrightarrow$  button on the remote control key. it is possible to open the tailgate within a limited period of time after it has been closed.

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. Therefore, the vehicle can always be locked ⊕ using the symbol button of the remote control.

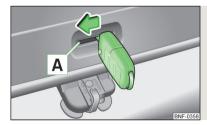
Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.



### Note

More detailed information about this is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

### **Emergency unlocking**



Fia. 18 Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings III on page 28.

The luggage compartment lid can be unlocked manually if there is a fault in the central locking system.

#### Unlocking

- > Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 45, Folding the rear seats forward.
- > Insert the vehicle key or a similar tool into the opening A » Fig. 18 in the lid trim up to the stop.
- > Unlock the lock in the direction of arrow.
- > Open the boot lid.

### **Electrical power windows**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

 Open / close window
 30

 Manually opening/closing rear windows
 31

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

### WARNING

- If the vehicle is locked from the outside, do not leave anybody in the vehicle as it is not possible to open the windows from the inside in the event of an emergency.
- When closing the windows, proceed with caution so as to avoid causing crushing injuries risk of injury!

### CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- If the windows are frozen, first of all remove the ice » page 117, Windows and exterior mirrors. Only then can the electrical power windows be operated, as otherwise the window seal and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

### For the sake of the environment

The windows must be kept closed at high speeds in order to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

### i

#### Note

The heating, air conditioning and ventilation system should be used to ventilate the inside of the vehicle while driving. If the windows are open, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle, and there may also be wind noise at certain speeds.

### Open / close window



Fig. 19 **Button on the driver's door** 



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 10 on page 30.

#### Opening

The window is opened by pressing lightly on the corresponding button. The opening process stops when one releases the button.

#### Closing

> The window is closed by pulling lightly on the corresponding upper edge of the button. The closing process stops when one releases the button.

### Manually opening/closing rear windows

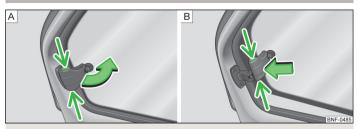


Fig. 20 Rear windows



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1. on page 30.

#### Opening

- Take hold of the safety in the recess » Fig. 20 A and open the window in the direction of the arrow.
- > Lock the window in the opened position by pressing the safety in the direction of arrow » Fig. 20 B.

#### Closing

- > Take hold of the safety in the recess and pull it in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 20 [B].
- > Close the window in the initial position in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 20 A until the safety audibly latches.

### Power sliding/tilting roof

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation \_\_\_\_\_\_ 31

The power sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof'), can only be operated with the rotary dial » Fig. 21 on page 31 when the ignition is turned on . The control dial has several positions.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as one of the front doors is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

### CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before unhooking the battery.
- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. Next, move the rotary switch into position A » Fig. 21 on page 31, pull the recess firmly downwards and hold forwards firmly. The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

### Operation

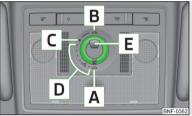


Fig. 21 Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 31.

#### Comfort position

> Turn the switch to position C » Fig. 21.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

#### Open partially

> Turn the switch to a position in area D » Fig. 21.

#### Open fully

> Turn the switch to position B » Fig. 21 and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

#### Tilting roof

> Turn the switch to position A » Fig. 21.

▶ In order to tilt, press the switch in the region of the lug **E** towards the roof.

#### Closina

- > Turn the switch to position A » Fig. 21.
- To close, press the switch on the recess **E** down and then push it forwards.

#### Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the switch on the recess down and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » ...

### WARNING

When closing the sliding/tilting roof proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

### CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

### Lights and visibility

### Lights

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Lights and low beam	33
Headlight beam adjustment	34
Daytime running light (DAY LIGHT)	34
Turn signal and main beam	
Fog lights	35
Rear fog light	35
Hazard warning light system	36
Parking light	36

#### Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is on.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering** the position of the controls differs from that shown in » Fig. 22 on page 33 . The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are however identical.

### WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.
- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

### i

#### Note

- The instruments are also illuminated when the side light or low beam light is switched on.
- The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

### Lights and low beam



Fig. 22 Dash panel: Light switch



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 33.

Light switch positions » Fig. 22.

- Switching on the parking light or parking lights on both sides » page 36
- Turn on the low beam
- Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
- Switch on the front fog lamp » page 35
- O# Switching on the rear fog light » page 35



- If the light switch is in the position ><, the ignition key is removed and the driver's door is open, an audible warning signal will sound. The audible warning signal is switched off by means of the door contact when the driver's door is closed (ignition off), however, the side lights remain on to illuminate the parked vehicle if necessary.
- $\blacksquare$  If leaving the vehicle without needing the parking lights on, always turn the light switch to position  $\emptyset$  .

### Headlight beam adjustment



Fig. 23

Dash panel: Knob for headlamp levelling



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 33.

Turning the rotary switch » Fig. 23 from position — to 3 gradually activates the headlight beam adjustment, thereby shortening the beam of light.

### The positions correspond approximately to the following car load.

- -- Front seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- 2 All seats occupied, luggage compartment loaded.
- 3 Driver seat occupied, luggage compartment loaded.

### WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

### Note

We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

### Daytime running light (DAY LIGHT)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 33.

The daytime running lights function provides the lighting of the front of the vehicle.

#### Switching on daytime running lights

> Turn the light switch into position () » Fig. 22 on page 33.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

- $\checkmark$  The ignition is switched on.

When the daytime running lights are switched on, the lighting for the instrument cluster is switched off, and the parking lights and the license plate light do not light up.

### Turn signal and main beam

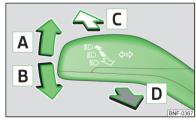


Fig. 24
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 33.

Lever positions » Fig. 24

- A Switch on right turn signal ⇔
- B Switch on left turn signal <
- C Switch on high beam 10
- Switch on high beam or headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position) 🗈

When the left or right turn signal is on, the warning light  $\diamondsuit$  or  $\diamondsuit$  flashes in the instrument cluster.

When the high beam or headlight flasher is on, the warning light ∎⊃lights up in the instrument cluster.

Turn signal for changing lanes - to only flash briefly, only move **the lever** up or down to the pressure point and **hold it in this position**.

#### Convenience turn signal

If you only wish to flash three times, briefly push **the lever** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

# WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

# Note

- The main beam can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.
- The turn signal only operates if the ignition is switched on.
- The turn signal is automatically cancelled after negotiating a curve.
- An acoustic warning signal will sound when the driver's door is opened if the lever is not in the middle position after removing the ignition key from the ignition lock. The acoustic warning signal will stop just as soon as the driver's door is closed.

### Fog lights



Fig. 25 **Dash panel: Light switch** 



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 33.

#### Switching on/off

- ➤ Pull the light switch into position 1, the symbol \$\mathbb{N}\$ in the light switch lights up.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

### Rear fog light



н

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 33.

#### Switching on/off

- > Turn the light switch to position (D) or (N) Fig. 25 on page 35.
- > Pull the light switch to position 2.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights » page 35, the rear fog light is switched on by turning the light switch to the position [a] and is pulled out directly to the position [a]. This switch can only be put into one position.

The warning light <code>d‡</code> lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 19, <code>0‡</code> The rear fog light.

### Hazard warning light system



Fig. 26 Button for hazard warning light system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 33.

#### Switching on/off

> Press the button 🛆 » Fig. 26.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

### WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.

- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has broken down.

### Parking light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 33.

#### Switch on parking light

> Turn the light switch » Fig. 25 on page 35 to position ≫ and lock the vehicle.

### **Indoor Lighting**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior light - Version 1	. 36
Interior light - Version 2	. 37□

### Interior light - Version 1



Fig. 27 Interior lighting – version 1



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 36.

Slide switch positions » Fig. 27.

- Switching on the light
- Switching off the light
- Operate light by using the door contact switch (middle position)

If operation of the lights using the door contact switch is enabled (switch is in the ® » Fig. 27position), **the light will come on**, if one of the following occurs.

- > The vehicle is unlocked.
- > One of the doors is opened.
- > The ignition key is removed.

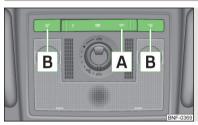
If operation of the lights with the door contact switch is enabled (switch is the  $\mathfrak{P}$  » Fig. 27position), **the light will go off**, if one of the following occurs.

- > The vehicle is locked.
- > The ignition is switched on
- > a few seconds after all the doors have been closed.

### Note

If the interior light remains switched on when the ignition is switched off or if one of the doors is open, the light will automatically go out after around 10 minutes.

### Interior light - Version 2



Fia. 28 Interior lighting - version 2

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 36.

Positions of the rocker switch A » Fig. 28.

- Switching on the light
- Switching off the light
- Operate light by using the door contact switch (middle position)

By pressing the B » Fig. 28 switch, the reading lights can be turned on/off.

The same principles apply for interior lighting version 2 as for » page 36, Interior light - Version 1.

### **Visibility**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rear window heater 38 = Sun visors

#### Rear window heater



Button for rear window heater

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 37.

#### Switch the rear window heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside the button.

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The rear window heater **switches off** automatically after approx. 10 minutes.

# For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy.



If the on-board voltage drops, the rear window heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 137, Automatic load deactivation.

#### Sun visors

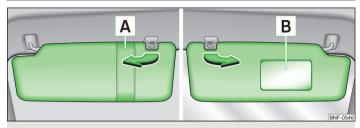


Fig. 30 Sun visor: Driver's side/front passenger's side



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 37.

The sun visor for the driver or front passenger can be pulled out of the fixture and swivelled towards the door in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 30.

The purpose of the strap **A** is to store small, light objects, such as a notepad, etc. The front passenger sun visor has a vanity mirror **B**.



A make-up mirror can also be installed in the driver's sun visor.

# Windscreen wipers and washers

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The windscreen wipers and the windscreen washer system only operate if the ignition is switched on.

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 129.

### WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 39.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

## CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the front or rear window.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.

### Note

- Periodic wiping is dependent on the driving speed. The faster the driver is going, the more frequent the wiper action.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. If the wiper is blocked by an obstruction, the wiper will remain stationary. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

- The capacity of the windscreen washer fluid reservoir is approximately 3 litres.
- The wiper blades should be cleaned on a regular basis with a windscreen cleaner to avoid any smears. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

### Operating windscreen wipers and washers

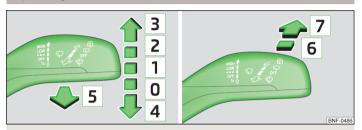


Fig. 31 Operating lever: Windscreen wipers and washer settings



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 38.

#### Lever positions » Fig. 31

- 0 Wipers off
- 1 Interval windscreen wiping
- 2 slow windscreen wiping
- 3 rapid windscreen wiping
- 4 Flick windscreen wiping (spring-tensioned position)
- 5 Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
- 6 Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
- 7 Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)

#### Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 1-3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen).

#### Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 1-3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen). The lever will stay in position after releasing it 6.

### Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

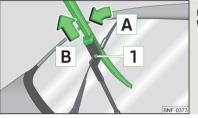


Fig. 32 Windscreen wiper blade



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 38.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

### Service position for changing wiper blades

- > Closing the bonnet.
- > Switch the ignition off and on again.
- > Press the windscreen wiper lever into position 4 » Fig. 31 on page 39 and the windscreen wiper arms will move into the service position.

### Removing the wiper blade

- > Raise the windscreen wiper arm from the rear window and slightly tilt the windscreen wiper blade towards the wiper arm, arrow A > Fig. 32.
- > Hold the windscreen wiper arm at the top end.
- > Press the locking button 1 and remove the wiper blade in the direction of arrow B.

### Attaching the wiper blade

- > Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
- > Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- > Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

> Turn on the ignition and press the windscreen wiper lever into position

4 » Fig. 31 on page 39; the windscreen wiper arms move to the home position. ■

### Replacing the rear windscreen wiper blade

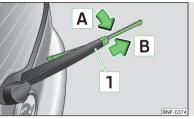


Fig. 33 Rear window wiper blade



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 10 n page 38.

#### Removing the wiper blade

- > Raise the windscreen wiper arm from the rear window and slightly tilt the windscreen wiper blade towards the wiper arm, arrow A >> Fig. 33.
- > Hold the windscreen wiper arm at the top end.
- > Press the locking button  $\fbox{1}$  and remove the wiper blade in the direction of arrow  $\fbox{B}.$

#### Attaching the wiper blade

- > Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
- > Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- > Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

### Rear mirror

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror	40
Exterior mirrors	41

### WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

### Note

- The exterior mirror heater only operates when the engine is running.
- Do not touch the surface of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- If the electrical exterior mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact a specialist garage if there is a fault with the power setting function for the exterior mirrors.

#### Interior mirror



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 10 on page 40.

#### Dimming mirror

> Adjust the lever at the lower edge of the mirror towards the windscreen.

#### Basic setting

> Adjust the lever at the lower edge of the mirror away from the windscreen.

### **Exterior mirrors**

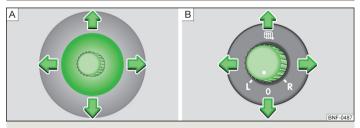
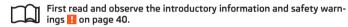


Fig. 34 Side door - knob for the exterior mirrors: mechanical / electrical



The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

### Mechanically-adjustable mirrors

The mirror surface can be set in the desired position » Fig. 34 - A with the rotary knob set.

#### Electrically-adjustable mirrors

The mirror surface can be set in the desired position » Fig. 34 - B with the rotary knob set.

The knob can be moved into the following positions.

- L Adjust the left mirror
- R Adjust the right mirror
- Switch off mirror control
- Mirror heater

### Folding in the exterior mirrors

The whole exterior mirror can be manually folded towards the side windows. To put it back into its original position, it should be folded back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

# Seats and stowing

### Front seats

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the front seats	43
Foldable front passenger seat	43
Front seat heating	44

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important:

- > for safely and quickly reaching the controls;
- > for a relaxed body position that reduces fatigue;
- > for achieving maximum protection from the seat belts and the airbag system.

### WARNING

General information

- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system risk of injury!
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 103, Transporting children safely with a suitable restraint system.
- The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted according to height, so that the occupants can be protected as effectively as possible.
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seat) risk of accident!

### WARNING

Information for the driver

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary risk of accident!
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you risk to life!
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

## WARNING

Information for the front seat passenger

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

# Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

### Adjusting the front seats



Fia. 35 Control elements at the seat



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 42.

#### Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

- > Pull the lever 1 » Fig. 35 up and push the seat into the desired position.
- > Release the lever 1 and push the seat until the lock clicks into place.

#### Adjusting height of seat

- In order to raisethe seating position, pull up the lever 2 » Fig. 35 or move it back and forth until the desired position is reached.
- To lower the seat position, push the lever 2 down or move it back and forth until the desired position is reached.

### Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

> Remove the load on the seat backrest (do not lean on it), pull the lever 3 » Fig. 35 or 4 towards the rear and set the desired angle of the seat backrest with the back.

### Folding the front seat forwards and moving it<sup>1)</sup>

> Pull the lever 3 » Fig. 35 or 4 a fold the backrest fully forwards. At the same time, move the seat forwards.

#### Moving seats into the initial position<sup>1)</sup>

- > Move the seat towards the rear until the lock is heard to engage.
- > Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.

### Foldable front passenger seat



Fia. 36 Folding the front passenger seat forward



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 42.

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position.

### Folding forward

- > Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 36.
- > Fold the seat backrest forward in the direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

The seat automatically moves forwards to the stop<sup>1)</sup>.

#### Folding backward

- > Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 36.
- Fold the seat backrest backward in the opposite direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

The seat automatically moves backwards to the stop<sup>1)</sup>.

The seat automatically moves backwards into the preset position<sup>2)</sup>.

<sup>1)</sup> Applies to front seats with the Easy Entry system.

<sup>2)</sup> Applies to front seats with the Easy Entry system and Memory function.

## WARNING

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat backrest that has been folded forwards » page 102.
- Only adjust the seat backrest when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, make sure that the seat backrest has been properly secured check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- If the seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be transported on the outer seat behind the driver.
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs out of the area between the seat and seat backrest risk of injury!
- The seat backrest that has been folded forwards must never be used to transport objects that:
  - could restrict the driver's view;
  - can make it impossible for the driver to operate the vehicle, e.g. if they could fall under the pedals or protrude into the driver's area;
  - could injure passengers when the driver accelerates sharply, changes direction or brakes.

### Front seat heating



Fig. 37 Heated front seats



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 42.

The front seats can be heated electrically. In some seat versions, the seat backrest is heated as well.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

> Press the symbol button ₩ or ₩ » Fig. 37 .

Pressing once switches the seat heating on at its maximum level.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the level of the seat heating is down-regulated up to the switch-off. The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

## WARNING

If, as an occupant, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend you do not use seat heating on the driver or front passenger seat. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can

### CAUTION

evaluate your specific condition.

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply pressure at specific points to avoid damaging the heating elements for the seat heaters.
- Do not turn on the seat heater if seats are not occupied.
- Do not switch on the seat heating if the seats have objects attached to or placed on them, for example a child seat, a bag, etc. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- If additional seat covers or protective covers are attached to the seats, do not turn on the seat heater there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heating.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » page 120, Seat covers.



#### Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 137, Automatic load deactivation.

#### Rear seats

m 1		1
الطبا	Intro	duction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Folding the rear seats forward	45
Head restraints	45■

### Folding the rear seats forward

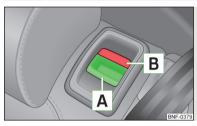


Fig. 38
Unlock the seat backrest



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 45.

The rear seat backrest can be folded forwards to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

### Folding the seat backrest forwards

- Push the release handle A » Fig. 38 to unlock the seat backrest and fold it forward.
- Move the head restraint fully towards the rear, or remove » page 45, Head restraints.

### Folding the seat backrest back into position

- > Push the head restraint into the slightly lifted seat backrest » page 45, Head restraints.
- > Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking handle clicks into place check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
- > Make sure that the red marker B » Fig. 38 is hidden.

### WARNING

- The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. It is only then that the three-point seat belt can reliably fulfil its function.

## CAUTION

Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.

### **Head restraints**

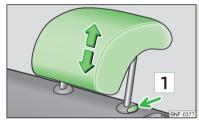


Fig. 39
Head restraints rear: adjusting/
removing



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 45.

Only the rear head restraints can be height-adjusted or removed or installed.

#### Setting height

- > Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push it upwards as required » Fig. 39.
- > To move the head restraint downwards, press and hold the safety button 1 with one hand and press the head restraint downwards with the other hand.

#### Removing/installing

> Fold the seat backrest a little forward >> page 45, Folding the rear seats forward. >>

- Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push it upwards as required.
- Press the safety button 1 » Fig. 39 with one hand and keep it pressed down and use the other hand to remove the head restraint.
- > To reinstall, press the safety button 1 and keep it pressed while moving the head rests as far down into the seat rests as possible until the safety button audibly latches.

### WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- Never drive with the head restraints removed risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.

# CAUTION

The head restraints are integrated into the seat backrests and cannot be adjusted.

### Luggage compartment

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Class N1 vehicles	47
Lashing eyes	47
Bag hooks	47
Fixing nets	48
Luggage compartment cover	48
Variable loading floor	49

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

- > Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- > Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the fixing net » page 47.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

#### Luggage compartment light

The light switches on/off when the luggage compartment lid is opened or closed.

### WARNING

- Store the objects in the luggage compartment and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects in the passenger compartment can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other oncoming traffic. This risk is still increased, if the objects which are flying around are hit by a deployed airbag. In this case, objects that are thrown back may injure the occupants risk to life.
- Please note that transporting heavy objects alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from being thrown forward, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres risk of injury!
- When transporting fastened objects which are sharp and dangerous in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 92, Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats.
- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle risk of poisoning!

### WARNING (Continued)

- Under no circumstances should the permissible axle loads and the permissible total vehicle weight be exceeded risk of accident!
- Never transport people in the luggage compartment!

# CAUTION

Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.

## Note

The tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load .

#### Class N1 vehicles



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings •• on page 46.

For safe vehicle operation, the proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential. It is important to ensure that it is not damaged in adaptation as well as the loading and unloading of the cargo space.

### Lashing eyes



Fig. 40 **Lashing eyes** 



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 46.

Fixing eyes are located on the sides of the loading area for lashing the goods to be loaded » Fig. 40.

### CAUTION

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

### Bag hooks

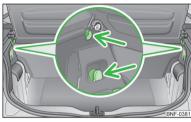


Fig. 41 Bag hooks



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 14 on page 46.

The luggage compartment has bag hooks used to secure smaller items of luggage, e.g. bags, etc  $\gg$  Fig. 41.

# WARNING

Never use the bag hooks for lashing loaded goods. The bag hooks may tear off during sudden braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

# CAUTION

The bag hooks may be loaded up to a maximum of 1.5 kg.

### Fixing nets

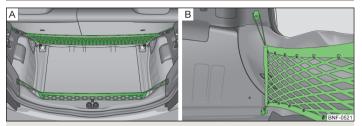


Fig. 42 Fixing nets/fastening details in the rear area of the luggage compartment

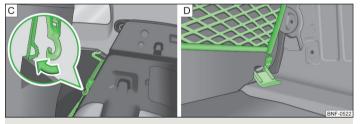


Fig. 43 Fixing nets: Details of the fastening behind the rear seats



Fixing examples for a fixing net as a horizontal pocket » Fig. 42 - A.

Details of the fastening in the rear area of the luggage compartment » Fig. 42 -  $\boxed{\mathbf{B}}$ ,

Details of the fastening for the fixing net to the upper lashing eyes behind the foldable rear seatrest » Fig. 43 -  $\boxed{c}$ .

Details of the fastening for the fixing net to the lashing eyes on the luggage compartment floor behind the rear seats  $\times$  Fig. 43 -  $\boxed{D}$ .

### CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects in the nets - risk of net damage.

### Luggage compartment cover

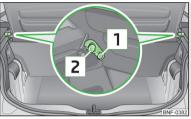


Fig. 44
Removing/installing the luggage compartment cover



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 46.

The luggage compartment cover can be removed if you wish to transport bulky goods.

### Folding up/folding down

- > To fold up, raise the luggage compartment cover and press into the side holders 1 > Fig. 44.
- > To fold down, pull the raised part of the luggage compartment cover to the rear.

#### Removing/installing

- > To remove, move the luggage compartment downwards from the side holders 2 » Fig. 44 .
- > To re-install it, place the luggage compartment cover on the side holders 2 and press on them from above into the holders 2.

# WARNING

- No objects should be placed on the luggage compartment cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Never drive while the luggage compartment cover is raised. Always fold it down before your journey, or remove it.

# CAUTION

Make sure that the luggage compartment cover is correctly engaged in the side holders  $\boxed{2}$  » Fig. 44 - risk of damage to luggage compartment cover/luggage compartment.

### Variable loading floor

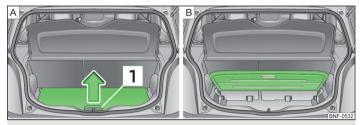


Fig. 45 Variable loading floor: open / fold

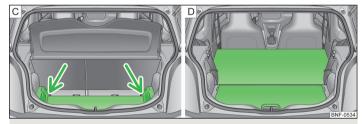


Fig. 46 Enlarge luggage compartment: down / forward

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 46.

#### Open/close

- Grasp the load floor at handle 1 and raise to the stop in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 45.
- > Close the load floor against the direction of the arrow.

#### Expanding luggage compartment downwards

- > Lift the load floor and push into the grooves » Fig. 46 C.
- > Place the load floor on the base of the luggage compartment.

### Expanding luggage compartment forwards

- > Remove the boot cover » page 48.
- > Remove the rear head restraints » page 45.
- > Fold the rear seat backrests forward » page 45.

### Roof rack system

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

# WARNING

- The transported items on the roof rack must be securely attached risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- Transporting heavy or large objects on the roof rack alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity or the increased wind exposure area risk of accident! The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances risk of accident!

### CAUTION

- Only use roof rack systems approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.
- When dealing with roof racks, the installation instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed.

- On vehicles with a panoramic sliding roof, make sure that the tilted panoramic sliding roof not strike any items which are transported.
- Ensure that the luggage compartment lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.



### For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

### fixing points for base support

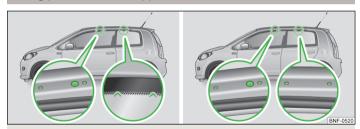


Fig. 47 Attachment points



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🖪 on page 49.

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.



### **CAUTION**

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

#### Roof load



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 49.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **50 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

### Useful equipment

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Cup holder	_ 51
Ash tray	_ 51
Cigarette lighter	_ 52
I2-volt power socket	_ 52
Clothes hooks	_ 53
Parking ticket holder	_ 53

# 1

#### WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic there is the risk of an accident.
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes or operate the clutch or accelerator pedal risk of accident!
- Ash and cigarette or cigar stubs must only be discarded in ashtrays!

### Cup holder

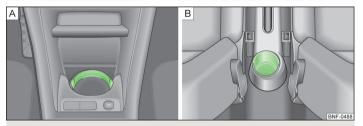


Fig. 48 Centre console: Cup holder at the front/rear



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 50.

The cup holder is located in the front » Fig. 48 -  $\blacksquare$  and rear » Fig. 48 -  $\blacksquare$  of the centre console.

#### Fixing cups in the front cup holder

Fold the cup holder clip » Fig. 48 - A towards the front.

Place the cup into the cup holder so that the cup holder clip surrounds the cup securely.

# WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill risk of scalding!
- No objects should be placed in the drinks holders, as the vehicle occupants could be endangered if sudden braking occurs or the vehicle collides with something.
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

# CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

### Ash tray



Fig. 49
Front centre console: Ashtrays



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1.0 on page 50.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » [].

#### Open/close

> To open, raise the cover of the ash tray in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 49. > To close, press the cover of the ash tray fully downwards.

#### Removing

> Pull out the ashtray upwards » !!.

#### Installing

> Insert the ashtray vertically.

# WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray - risk of fire!

# CAUTION

When removing, do not hold the ashtray at the cover - risk of breakage.

### Cigarette lighter



Fig. 50 Centre console: Cigarette lighter



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 50.

#### Operating the cigarette lighter

- > Press in the button of the cigarette lighter » Fig. 50.
- > Wait until the button pops forward.
- > Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
- > Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

### WARNING

Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper use of the cigarette lighter can cause burns.

### Note

- The cigarette lighter operates only if the ignition is switched on.
- The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12Volt socket for electrical appliances » page 52, 12-volt power socket.
- Further information » page 110, Modifications, adjustments and technical alterations.

### 12-volt power socket



Fig. 51 Centre console: Power socket



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 50.

The 12-Volt power socket is located in the storage compartment in the centre console »  ${\sf Fiq.\,51}$ .

#### Using the power socket

- > Open the power socket cap » Fig. 51.
- > Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

### WARNING

- Improper use of the 12-volt power socket and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The power socket and the connected devices can only be used when the ignition is switched on.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

### CAUTION

- The 12-Volt power socket will only work when ignition is switched on.
- The 12-volt power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- If electrical consumers are switched on when the engine is not running, this will cause the car battery to discharge risk of battery discharge!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power socket.

- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Before turning the ignition on or off, and before starting the car, switch off the device connected to the 12-volt power socket to prevent any damage caused by voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

#### Clothes hooks



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 50.

The clothes hooks are located at the centre door bars.

## WARNING

- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.
- Only use the hooks for hanging light items of clothing and ensure that there are no heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of side airbag.

# CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

### Parking ticket holder



Fig. 52 Windscreen: Parking ticket holder



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 50.

The note holder » Fig. 52 is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

# WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

### Storage compartments

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Storage compartment on the driver's side	54
Storage compartment on the front passenger side	54
storage Storage compartment with lid on the front passenger side	54
Bag holder	55
Photo holder	55
Storage compartment in the front centre console	55
Multimedia holder	56
Meshed pockets on the front seat rests	56
Storage compartments in front of the rear seats	56

### WARNING

н

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic risk of accident!
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes or operate the clutch or accelerator pedal risk of accident!

### Storage compartment on the driver's side



Fig. 53

Dash panel: Storage compartment on the driver's side



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 53.

The open stowage compartment can be found underneath the dash panel on the driver's side » Fig. 53.

# WARNING

- Ensure that when driving no objects from the centre console may get into the driver's footwell. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes or operate the clutch or accelerator pedal risk of accident!
- Never store hard, heavy or sharp items in an opened stowage compartment. ■

### Storage compartment on the front passenger side



Fig. 54
Dash panel: Storage compartment on the front passenger side



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1. on page 53.

The open stowage compartment can be found underneath the dash panel on the front passenger's side » Fig. 54.

#### Bag hooks

There is a bag hook  $\boxed{1}$  » Fig. 54at the open stowage compartment which is used to hang smaller items of luggage, e.g. bags, or similar.

# 1

#### CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 1.5 kg.

# storage Storage compartment with lid on the front passenger side

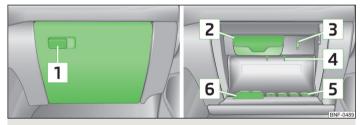


Fig. 55 Dash panel: Storage compartment on the front passenger side



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 53.

#### Open/close

> Pull on the opening lever 1 » Fig. 55.

Please read the following information if there is a foldable hook in the opening lever » page 55, ... in section *Bag holder*.

> To close, push the cover upwards.

The cover must engage firmly.

#### Overview of the stowage compartment:

- 1 Opening lever
- Glasses storage box
- Notepad holder
- Pen holder
- Coin holder
- Card holder

# WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

### Bag holder

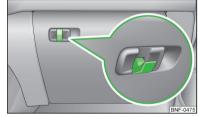


Fig. 56 Dash panel: folding hooks

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 53.

There is a foldable hook in the opening lever of the storage compartment on the front passenger's side » Fig. 56, which is used to suspend smaller items of luggage, e.g. bags, etc.

### CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the hook is 1.5 kg.
- When the hook is folded forward, it folds back automatically when the storage compartment is opened.
- We recommend detaching suspended luggage from the hook before the storage compartment lid is opened.

#### Photo holder



Fia. 57 Dash panel: Photo holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🗓 on page 53.

The middle part of the dashboard has a holder » Fig. 57which is used to fasten e.g. photos, notes, etc.

# **CAUTION**

Do not damage the holders when handling them.

### Storage compartment in the front centre console



Fig. 58 Front centre console: Stowage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 53.

The open stowage compartment in the centre console » Fig. 58.

### Multimedia holder



Fia. 59 Front centre console: Multimedia holder



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 53.

The multimedia holder can be found in the stowage compartment of the front centre console » Fig. 59.

You can use this holder to store e.g. a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

# WARNING

Never use the multimedia holder as an ashtray or for storing flammable obiects - risk of fire!

### Meshed pockets on the front seat rests



Fig. 60 Front seat rests: Meshed pockets



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 53.

The insides of the front seat rests have meshed pockets » Fig. 60.

These meshed pockets are designed for small, light objects, such as a mobile phone or MP3 player.

WARNING

You can use the meshed pockets to store items with a gross weight of up to 150 a. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently - risk of injury!

## CAUTION

Never put large objects into the meshed pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the meshed pockets.

### Storage compartments in front of the rear seats



Fia. 61 In front of the rear seats: Stowage compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 53.

There are open stowage compartments located in front of the rear seats » Fig. 61.

# Heating and air-conditioning

# Heating, ventilation and cooling

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlet vents \_\_\_\_\_\_ 57

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during winter months.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding the recalculated air mode for air-conditioning » page 61.

## WARNING

For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.

# CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free from ice, snow or leaves, for example, to ensure that the heating and cooling system works properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!

### Note

- The used air streams out through the vents in the luggage compartment.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

### Air outlet vents



Fig. 62 Air outlet vents

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 57.

Warmed, not warmed fresh or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of the control dial and the outside atmospheric conditions.

#### Opening

To open the air outlet vents 1 » Fig. 62, press on the air outlet vent.

#### Closing

To close the air outlet vents 1 » Fig. 62, fold the fins back.

### Changing the air flow direction

> Adjust the flow direction by turning the fins.

### Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with objects of any kind.

### Heating

### Introduction

### Control elements

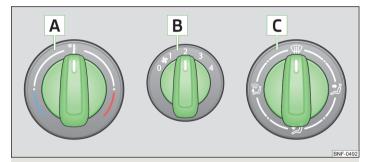


Fig. 63 Heating: Control elements



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 63:

- A Set the temperature (turn to the left: to reduce the temperature: turn to the right: to increase temperature)
- **B** Set the blower stage (stage 0: Fan out, stage 4: the highest blower speed)
- C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 57

Controls **A** and **C** can be set at any position in between.

# WARNING

The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

### Setting

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 58.

Recommended basic settings of the heating controls.

Set-up	Setting th	Air outlet vents 1 » Fig. 62 on page 57		
Set-up	Α	В	С	All outlet vents 1 » Fig. 62 on page 57
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	To the right up to the stop	3		Open and align with the side window
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	2 or 3	<b>*/</b> **	Open and align with the side window
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3	***	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	<b>#</b> 1 <b>#</b> 3	Opening
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position	<b>*</b>	Opening

## H N

#### Note

If the air distribution is positioned towards the windows, the total amount of air is used to defrost the windows and thus no air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.

# Air conditioning system

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements	60
Setting the air conditioning system	61
Recirculated air mode	61
Using the air conditioning system economically	62
Operational problems	62

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The cooling system is switched on » page 60.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
- The blower switch is switched on (positions 1-4).

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

# CAUTION

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

# i

#### Note

We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

#### Control elements

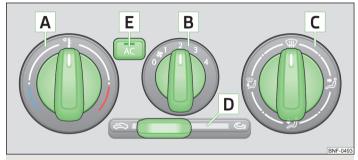


Fig. 64 The air conditioning system: Control elements



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 59.

### Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 64:

- A Set the temperature (turn to the left: to reduce the temperature: turn to the right: to increase temperature)
- B Set the blower stage (stage 0: Fan out, stage 4: the highest blower speed)
- C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 57
- D Switch recirculation on / off » page 61
- E Switching the cooling system on/off

#### Note

- If the air distribution is positioned towards the windows, the total amount of air is used to defrost the windows and thus no air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.
- The warning light in the **AC** button (» Fig. 64, Pos. **E**) lights after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met » page 59. As a result, the readiness for cooling is signalled when all conditions are satisfied » page 59.

### Setting the air conditioning system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings !! on page 59.

Recommended basic settings of the air conditioning controls.

Set-up	Setting the regulator » Fig. 64 on page 60				Button » Fig. 64 on page 60	Air outlet vents 1 » Fig. 62	
	Α	В	С	D	E	on page 57	
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows <sup>a)</sup>	Desired tempera- ture	3 or 4	(III)	₹	Activated	Open and align with the side window	
The fastest heating	To the right up to the stop	3		Short 😂,	Switched off	Opening	
Comfortable heating	Desired tempera- ture	2 or 3	<b>#1</b> / <b>#</b>	₹3	Switched off	Opening	
The fastest cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 4, then 2 or 3	<b>*</b>	Short 🔾,	Activated	Opening	
Comfortable cooling	Desired tempera- ture	1, 2 or 3	<b>*</b> 3	₹	Activated	Open and align to the roof	
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position	پُرْ	<b>₹</b>	Switched off	Opening	

a) We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.

#### Recirculated air mode



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 59.

Recirculated air mode mostly prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

### Switching on

> Move the sliding regulator □ » Fig. 64 on page 60 into position 🖙 .

#### Switching off

> Move the sliding regulator **D** » Fig. 64 on page 60 into position ⇔.

# WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

### Using the air conditioning system economically

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 59.

The compressor on the air conditioning system uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will effect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.



### For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also reduced when fuel is saved » page 74.

### Operational problems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 59.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

- One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 154.
- The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 15.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

### Communication and multimedia

### Telephone and Move & Fun

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mobile phones and two-way radio systems	63
Multifunction deviceMove & Fun	64

### Mobile phones and two-way radio systems



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please consult a ŠKODA Partner for information about the possibility of installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

The possible reasons for this are.

- > no external aerial.
- > external aerial incorrectly installed.
- > transmission power greater than 10 watts.

### WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Use the telephone system only to such an extent that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time.
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.

### WARNING (Continued)

- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in another area from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision risk of injury.

## Note

- We recommend that the installation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems in a vehicle be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

### Multifunction deviceMove & Fun



Fig. 65
Cap of the opening for the cradle of the multifunction device

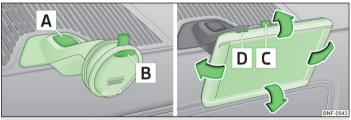


Fig. 66 Cradle on the multifunction device/multifunction device



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 63.

### Removing the cap

Insert a slotted screwdriver into the recess marked with an arrow » Fig. 65 and fold the cover carefully upwards.

#### Installing the cradle for the navigation unit

> Place the cradle into the opening of the centre section of the dash panel from above, press it down until it latches >> 1.

#### Installing the multifunctional device

> Firstly, place the multifunction device into the top holder B » Fig. 66 and press it on the underside of the cradle until it latches » .

#### Setting the tilt of the multifunction device

> You can set the tilt to the required position by moving the multifunction device in the direction of the arrows » Fig. 66 » !.

### Removing the multifunction device

- > With one hand, secure the multifunction device on the upper and lower edge.
- > Using the other hand, press the release button  $\boxed{\textbf{C}}$  » Fig. 66 and remove the device.
- > Store the multifunction device in a safe place to avoid damaging it.

#### Removing the cradle on the multifunction device

- > Grab hold of the cradle with one hand.
- > With the other hand, press the release button A » Fig. 66.
- > Remove the cradle from the dash panel from above.
- > Seal the opening for the cradle in the dash panel with the cover » Fig. 65.

#### Loading the user manual

- > Switch on the multifunction device by pressing button D » Fig. 66.
- > Press the button more on the screen.
- > Press the button Manual on the screen.
- > Call up the required chapter by pressing the appropriate button.

#### Functions of the multifunction device

- > Navigation, TMC traffic information, lane assistance, and speed assistant.
- > Operating the radio, media player and multimedia devices connected via Bluetooth  $^{\circ}$  .
- Displaying information from the MFD, rev counter and coolant temperature » page 10.
- > Hands-free device for mobile phones coupled with the multifunction device via  $\mathsf{Bluetooth}^{\$}.$
- > Indicator for opened bonnet, doors and luggage compartment lid.
- > Display from the visual parking system (OPS).
- > Image viewer.
- The toll service Live services traffic, radar to measure the speed on the road, weather and news search in the Yelpsystem.
- > Route planning with consideration of the CNG filling station network (multistop).

## WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Only use the system such that you are in full control of your vehicle in every traffic situation risk of accident!
- The multifunction device must always slot securely into the cradle or be safely stored in the vehicle.
- Unsecured or incorrectly secured multifunction devices may be thrown through the interior of the vehicle and cause injuries in a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident.
- Adjust the volume to ensure that acoustic signals from outside, e.g. sirens from vehicles which have the right of way, such as police, ambulance and fire brigade vehicles, can be heard at all time.
- High volumes can cause hearing damage.

### CAUTION

- Improper tilt settings can damage both the multifunction device and the cradle.
- Always take the multifunction device with you when leaving the vehicle to protect it from extreme temperatures and strong sunlight. Extreme ambient temperatures can impair the functioning of the multifunction device and may damage the device.
- Moisture can damage the electrical contacts in the dash panel for the portable multifunction device.
- Never use water when cleaning the navigation unit cradle. Always use a dry cloth instead.
- Install/remove the multifunction device cradle without the multifunction device in it.
- Do not install/remove the multifunction device until the cradle for the multifunction device has been installed into the dash panel.

# Note

The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is e.g. in a jacket pocket, this can lead to difficulties when establishing the Bluetooth® connection with the hands-free system or the data transfer.

# **Driving**

# Starting-off and Driving

### Steering

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the steering wheel position 66 Power steering \_\_\_\_\_

# WARNING

- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). Otherwise, activation of the driver airbag could cause severe injuries to arms, hands and head.
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance B » Fig. 67 on page 66between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- If the steering wheel is adjusted further towards the head, the protection provided by the driver airbag in the event of an accident is reduced. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.

### Adjusting the steering wheel position

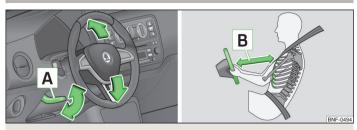


Fig. 67 Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below the steering wheel/safe distance to the steering wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔢 on page 66.

The height of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- > First of all adjust the driver's seat » page 43.
- > Swing the lever A » Fig. 67 below the steering wheel down.
- Adjust the height of the steering wheel to the desired position.
- > Push the lever upwards to the stop.

### WARNING

The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidentally change during the journey - risk of accident!

### Power steering



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 66.

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

The power steering only works when the engine is running.

It is still fully possible to steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (e.g. when towing). However, greater physical effort is required to turn the steering wheel.

If there is a fault in the power steering, the warning light  $\odot$  or  $\odot$  lights up in the instrument cluster » page 18.

### Starting and stopping the engine

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobilizer	68
Ignition lock	68
Starting the engine	68
Switching off the engine	68

The engine can only be started using a correctly coded original key.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

### WARNING

- When driving, the ignition key must always be in the position 2 » Fig. 68 on page 68 (ignition switched on) without the engine running. This position is indicated by the warning lights coming on. If this is not the case, this could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel risk of accident!
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise, the steering could be blocked - risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle, the ignition must always be removed. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Children could otherwise start the engine for example risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary risk of accident!

### WARNING

- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases from the engine contain substances such as odourless and colourless carbon monoxide (a poisonous gas) risk to life!
- Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.

# CAUTION

- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running 3 × Fig. 68 on page 68.
- If the engine does not start up after a second attempt, the fuse for the fuel pump may have a fault. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 154, Fuses on the underside of the dash panel, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts otherwise the starter could be damaged.
- Do not tow start the engine there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 150, Jump-starting.

### CAUTION

- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

### For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

# Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

#### Electronic immobilizer



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 67.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

### **Ignition lock**

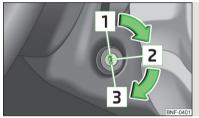


Fig. 68 Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 67.

- Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
- Ianition switched on
- Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.

If the **steering is locked** and the key cannot or can only be turned with difficulty into position 2 » Fig. 68, move the steering wheel back and forth and the steerina lock unlocks.



#### Note

We recommend locking the steering wheel whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car.

### Starting the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 67.

- > Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position N and firmly apply the handbrake.
- > Switch on the ignition 2 » Fig. 68 on page 68.
- > Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
- > Turn the key into position 3 to the stop and release immediately after the engine has been started - do not apply the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

> Release the handbrake.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

### Switching off the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔢 on page 67.

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key into position 1 » Fig. 68 on page 68.

#### **Brakes**

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on braking \_\_\_\_\_ Handbrake 70 ▶

## WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off - risk of accident!
- The clutch pedal must be actuated when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the function of the brake booster may be impaired - risk of accident!
- In the event of damage occurring to the standard fitted front spoiler or the retrofitting of another front spoiler, wheel hubs etc. » page 110, Modifications, adjustments and technical alterations, It must be ensured that the air supply to the front brake is not impaired. The front brakes may overheat. which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system risk of accident!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move - risk of accident!

# **CAUTION**

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 74.
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

### Information on braking



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 68.

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Before travelling a long distance at a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

#### Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving stvle.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must also be checked by a specialist garage between service intervals.

#### Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

#### Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

#### Faults in the brake surface

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

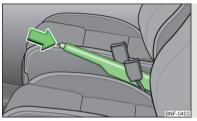
#### Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 16, • Braking system.

#### Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

#### Handbrake



Fia. 69 Handbrake



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 68.

#### Apply

> Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

#### Loosenina

- > Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and at the same time push in the locking button » Fig. 69.
- Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (1) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 6 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

# WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system - risk of accident!

# Manual gear changing and pedals

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing \_\_\_\_\_ 71 Pedals

# Manual gear changing



Fig. 70 Shift pattern of the transmission



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 70.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear to the clutch.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 12.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

### WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving - risk of accident!

# CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

#### **Pedals**



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 70.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied footmats or footmats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

# WARNING

No objects are allowed in the driver's footwell – risk of obstruction or limitation in operating the pedals!

# **Automated transmission**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and lever control	71
Manual gearshift (Tiptronic)	72
Starting-off and driving	72
Operational faults	73

# WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if changing the forward driving mode risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** when driving risk of accident!
- Always firmly apply the handbrake before leaving the vehicle!

# CAUTION

When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

# i

#### Note

- $\blacksquare$  The engine can only be left on in position  $\mathbf{N},$  when the brake pedal is depressed .
- If the selector lever position **N** is accidentally selected while driving, it is first necessary to release pressure on the accelerator pedal and wait for the idling speed of the engine to be reached before the selector lever can be engaged in the drive position.
- $\blacksquare$  If the N symbol flashes next to the selector lever, engage the selector lever position N.

### Modes and lever control

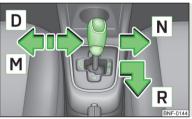


Fig. 71
Selector lever



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ... on page 71.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 71.

#### N - Neutral

The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

#### R - Reverse gear

Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

The brake pedal must be depressed before setting into position  ${\bf R}$  from position  ${\bf N}$ .

#### D - Mode for forwards travel (normal programme)

In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed.

The brake pedal must be depressed before setting into position  $\mathbf D$  from position  $\mathbf N.$ 

#### M - Manual gearshift (Tiptronic)

Further information » page 72.

# Manual gearshift (Tiptronic)



Fig. 72 Selector lever: manual shifting/instrument cluster: engaged gear



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 71.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 12.

#### Switching to manual shifting when the vehicle is stationary

- > Depress the brake pedal.
- > Press the selector lever twice to the left in the spring-tensioned position.

#### Switching to manual shifting during driving

> Press the selector lever towards the left in the spring-tensioned position in the direction of the arrow and insert into position M. The selector lever position you have engaged appears in the instrument cluster display 1 × Fig. 72.

#### Shifting up gears

> Press the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 72.

#### Shifting down gears

> Press the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 72.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.



#### Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear on the brakes » page 69, *Information on braking*.

# Starting-off and driving



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 71.

#### Starting off

- > Start the engine.
- > Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Press the selector lever towards the left in the spring-tensioned position in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 71 on page 71 and insert into position D.
- > Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

#### Stop

- > Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- > Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position  ${\bf N}$  does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

#### **Parking**

- > Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- > Firmly apply the handbrake.
- > Move the selector lever to the right in the direction of the arrow  $\gg$  Fig. 71 on page 71 into position N .

#### Kick-down

The Kick-down function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the Kick-down function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.



#### WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of vehicle control – risk of accident!

# Operational faults



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 71.

In the event of a fault in the automatic gearbox, warning lights may light up in the instrument panel » page 20, 0 0 6 8 Automated transmission.

#### **Emergency programme**

The transmission switches to the emergency programme, if there is a fault in the automatic transmission.

Indications of an activated emergency programme include the following.

- > Only certain gears are selected.
- > The reverse gear R cannot be used.

#### Gearbox overheating

The gearbox may become too hot due to frequent repeated starting or stop-and-go traffic, for example.

The vehicle does not start off after engaging the selector lever position If the vehicle does not start off, the problem may be that the selector lever is not completely in the selected position. In such an instance, press the brake pedal and put the selector lever into the required position.

# Running in

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine	73
New tyres	74
New brake pads	74

### New engine



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 73.

The engine has to be run in during the first 1500 kilometres.

#### Up to 1000 kilometres

- > Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, i.e. 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- > No full throttle.
- > Avoid high engine speeds.
- > Do not tow a trailer.

#### From 1000 up to 1500 kilometres

**Gradually** increase the power output of the engine up to the full speed of the gear engaged, i.e. up to the maximum permissible engine speed.

The red scale of the rev counter indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx.1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds even after the running-in period.

On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. Observe the recommended gear » page 12, Recommended gear. Very high engine speeds when accelerating (accelerator) are automatically restricted » .

With vehicles with a manual gearbox, do not drive at unnecessarily **low** engine speeds. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » page 12, Recommended gear.

# CAUTION

- The engine is not protected from excessive engine revs caused by shifting down at the wrong time. This can result in a sudden increase in revs beyond the permissible maximum rpm, thereby causing engine damage.
- Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.



### For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds. Shifting up sooner helps save fuel, reduces engine noise and protects the environment.

### New tyres



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 73.

New tyres must firstly be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first. Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

# New brake pads



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 73.

New brake pads do not initially provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

# Economical driving and environmental sustainability

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Looking ahead	75
Economical gear changing	75
Avoiding full throttle	75
Reducing idling	75
Avoiding short distances	
Checking tyre inflation pressure	
Avoiding unnecessary ballast	
Regular maintenance	76
Saving electrical energy	
Environmental compatibility	77

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and the wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depend essentially on the following three factors:

- > your personal driving style
- > operating conditions
- > technical requirements

The fuel economy by can be improved by 10 -15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also be influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, weather and driving style.

Such an engine speed should be adhered to when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.

# CAUTION

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature.

### Looking ahead



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ... on page 74.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

### Economical gear changing

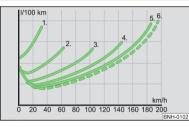


Fig. 73 Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 10 on page 74.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

#### Manual gearbox

- > Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
- > Shift up into the next gear at approx. 2000 rpm.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » page 12, *Recommended gear*.

A suitably selected gear can have an effect on fuel consumption » Fig. 73.

#### Automatic gearbox

- > Slowly apply the accelerator pedal. However, do not depress it to the Kick-down position » page 72.
- An economic driving programme is automatically selected if the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly.

### Avoiding full throttle

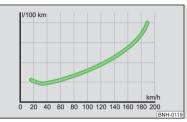


Fig. 74
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 74.

Driving more slowly saves fuel.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear on your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should ideally never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionally at high speeds.

The » Fig. 74 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. Fuel consumption will be halved if you drive at only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle.

### Reducing idling



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START-STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30 – 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started, High engine speeds should however be avoided.

### Avoiding short distances

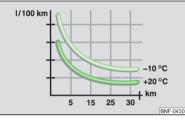


Fig. 75 Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in I/100 km at different temperatures

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 10 on page 74.

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The image » Fig. 75 shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and at a temperature of -10 °C.

The vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in winter than in summer.

### Checking tyre inflation pressure



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct. If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyres will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are cold.

### Avoiding unnecessary ballast



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 10 on page 74.

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each kilogramme of **weight** increases the fuel consumption. Therefore, we recommend to carry no unnecessary weight.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, your vehicle that is fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

### Regular maintenance



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for economical driving. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal.

Check the **oil level** at regular intervals, e.g. when filling up. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5 000 km.



### For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic high-lubricity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the ground.



#### Note

We recommend that your vehicle be serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA service partner.

# Saving electrical energy



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. If more electrical components of the electrical system are switched on, more fuel is needed to operate the alternator. We therefore recommend switching off electrical components if these are no longer required.

# **Environmental compatibility**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, material selection and production of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

### Design measures

- > Joints designed to be easily detached.
- > Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- > Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- > Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.
- > Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO<sub>2</sub>.
- > Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- > Reduced noise.

#### Choice of materials

- > Extensive use of recyclable material.
- > Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- > No cadmium.
- No asbestos.
  - > Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

#### Manufacture

- > Solvent-free cavity protection.
- > Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
- > The use of solvent-free adhesives.
- > No CFCs used in the production process.
- > Without use of mercury.
- > Use of water-soluble paints.

#### Trade-in and recycling of old cars

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always<sup>1)</sup> be returned.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

<sup>1)</sup> Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

# i

#### Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

# Avoiding damage to your vehicle

### Introduction

Driving through water on streets \_\_\_\_\_

#### General information



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 78.

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.

- > When driving on poorly maintained roads and paths.
- > When driving over kerbs.
- > When driving on steep ramps, etc.

Particular attention is required for vehicles with sport suspension and when the vehicle is fully laden.

# Driving through water on streets



Fig. 76 **Driving through water** 

#### First read and observe the introductory information given on page 78.

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

> Determine the depth of the water before driving through.

The water level must not reach above the bar on the lower beam » Fig. 76.

> Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to penetrate into the engine's air induction system or other parts of the vehicle.

- > Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.
- Deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 85, START-STOP.

# WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can impair the braking power and extend the braking distance risk of accident!
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

### CAUTION

- When driving through water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, qearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Any vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

Note

After driving through water, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.

# **Driving abroad**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

In certain countries, it may be possible that the ŠKODA Partner network is limited or has not been established. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

### Unleaded petrol



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 79.

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » page 123, *Unleaded petrol*. Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

### Headlights



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 79.

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle oncoming drivers. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

# l N

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

# **Assist systems**

# **Brake assist systems**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	80
Antilock Braking System (ABS)	81
Traction Control System (TCS)	81
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)	81

# WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks risk of accident!
- In the event of an ABS fault, visit a specialist garage immediately. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage or the extent to which this is limiting the braking efficiency.

# CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » page 110, Modifications, adjustments and technical alterations.
- If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL will also fail to work. An ABS fault is indicated with the warning light ( ) » page 19.

### **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 80.

The ESC system helps improve control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. Depending on the conditions of the road surface, the risk of skidding is reduced, thereby improving the vehicle's driving stability .

The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. In the event of deviations, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light 👂 flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **electronic stabilisation control (ESC)**:

- > Antilock brake system (ABS),
- > Traction control (TCS);
- > Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)
- > Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)
- > Hill Hold Control (HHC).

In the event of an ESC fault, the ESC warning light 6 illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 18.

#### Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

The ABS is activated faster and more effectively with the intervention of the HBA.

#### Hill Hold Control (HHC)

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active as of a 5 % slope, if the driver door is closed. HHC is always only active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

### **Antilock Braking System (ABS)**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 80.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

### Traction Control System (TCS)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 80.

If the wheels are slipping, the TCS adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The TCS makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

The TCS function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light (12) flashes in the instrument cluster.

If there is a fault in the TCS, the warning light then lights up in the instrument cluster w » page 19.

### **Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!!** on page 80.

If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

The EDL switches off automatically in order to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

# Parking aid

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	82
Visual parking system	82

# WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they are not recognised by the parking aid sensors.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the parking aid sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the System sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the system. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

# CAUTION

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the parking aid to operate properly.
- Additionally installed modules such as bicycle carriers can impair the function of the parking aid.

### **Function**

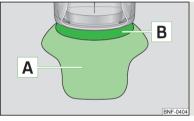


Fig. 77
Parking aid: Range of sensors

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 81.

The parking aid (hereafter referred to solely as system) only works when the ignition is switched on.

The system assists the driver by giving acoustic signals and displaying information on the screen of the Move & Fun multi-function device when parking and manoeuvring » page 82, Visual parking system.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are integrated in the rear bumper.

#### Range of sensors

The clearance warning begins at a distance of about 150 cm from the obstacle (area  $\boxed{\mathbf{A}}$  » Fig. 77). The interval between the warning signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced.

A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm (area B) – danger area. You should not reverse any further after this signal sounds!

#### Activation/deactivation

The parking aid is activated automatically when **reverse gear** is engaged and the ignition is turned on. This is confirmed by a brief audible signal.

The parking aid is deactivated by removing the reverse gear.

### Visual parking system

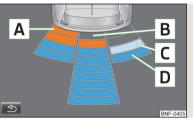


Fig. 78
Screen display of the visual parking system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 81.

The visual parking system is shown in the screen of the multifunctional device Move  $\&\ {\rm Fun.}$ 

### Switching on the screen display of the visual parking system

When the ignition and the multifunction device Move & Fun are both on, the visual parking system is switched on by shifting into reverse gear.

- An obstacle appearing in the collision zone is shown as an orange-coloured segment » Fig. 78. Do not drive the vehicle!
- B An area without detected obstacles is shown as a transparent segment.
- An obstacle in the sensor range which lies outside of the collision area is shown by the light-blue segment.
- D A region behind the detected obstacle is shown with the dark-blue segment.

#### Switching off the screen display of the visual parking system

The screen display can be switched off as follows.

- > By tapping the symbol button ⇒ in the MFP screen » Fig. 78.
- > By shifting out of reverse.
- > By turning off the ignition.

# WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Only use the system so that you are in full control of your vehicle in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

# Note

- The visual parking system is shown in the screen of the multifunction device Move & Fun within a few seconds of shifting into reverse gear.
- More information about the mobile multifunction device Move & Fun can be found in the digital operating manual in the device » page 64, Multifunction deviceMove & Fun.

# **Cruise Control System**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Storing a speed	84
Changing a stored speed	84
Off temporarily	84
Switch off completely	84

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed, more than 25 km/h, without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

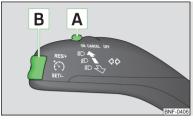
# WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) risk of accident!
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.

# CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with steeper gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. Therefore, shift to a lower gear in good time or slow the vehicle down by applying the foot brake.
- It is not possible to switch on the cruise control system on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox if the first gear or reverse gear is engaged.
- It is not possible on vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox to switch on the cruise control system if the selector lever is in the position N or R.
- The Cruise Control System may automatically switch off when some assist systems (e.g. ESC, City Safe Drive) intervene, when the speed exceeds maximum permissible engine speed, or if a similar event takes place.

### Storing a speed



Fia. 79 Operating lever: Operating the cruise control system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 83.

#### Storing a speed

- > Turn the switch A » Fig. 79 into the **ON** position.
- After the desired speed has been reached, press the rocker button B into the SET position.

After you have released the rocker button **B** out of the position **SET**, the speed you have just stored is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

# Changing a stored speed



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings III on page 83.

#### Increasing the speed with the accelerator

- > Depress the accelerator to increase the speed.
- > Release the accelerator to reduce the speed back down to the preset speed.

However, if the saved speed is exceeded by more than 10 km/h for a period of more than 5 minutes by depressing the accelerator, the stored speed is deleted from the memory. You have to re-store the desired speed.

### Increasing the speed with the rocker button B

- > Press the rocker button B >> Fig. 79 on page 84 into the RES position.
- The speed will increase continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the RES position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

#### Decreasing the speed

- The stored speed can be reduced by pressing the rocker button B » Fig. 79 on page 84 into the position SET.
- The speed will decrease continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **SET** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.
- If the rocker button is released at a speed of under approx, 25 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. The speed must then be stored again by pressing the rocker button B in the SET position after increasing the speed of the vehicle to more than approx. 25 km/h.

The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system.

### Off temporarily



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🖪 on page 83.

The cruise control system can be **temporarily switched off**by pushing the switch A » Fig. 79 on page 84 into the spring-mounted CANCEL position or by depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly push the rocker button **B** into the **RES** position to **resume** the set speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.

### Switch off completely



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 83.

> Turn the switch A » Fig. 79 on page 84 » page 84 into the OFF position.

### START-STOP

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Starting/shutting down the engine	85
Operating conditions of the system	85
Manually activating/deactivating the system	86

The START-STOP system helps you to save fuel while at the same time reducing harmful exhaust emissions and  ${\rm CO_2}$  emissions.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

In the start-stop mode, the engine automatically switches to the vehicle's idle phase, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights. The engine restarts automatically where necessary.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

- The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.

# WARNING

- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.

# CAUTION

Always deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 78.

# i

#### Note

- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine must be started manually with the key.
- After manually starting the engine on vehicles with manual transmission, automatic engine shut down is not possible until the vehicle has travelled the required minimum distance for START-STOPmode.
- Changes to the outdoor temperature can have an effect on the internal temperature of the vehicle battery even after several hours. If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.

# Starting/shutting down the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 85.

- > Stop the vehicle (where necessary, apply the handbrake).
- > Put the gear stick into Neutral.
- > Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shut down (STOP phase) takes place. The warning symbol A appears in the instrument cluster display.

> Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again (START phase). The warning symbol  $\ensuremath{\Theta}$  goes out.

# Operating conditions of the system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\blacksquare$  on page 85.

The START-STOP system is very complex. Some of the procedures are hard to check without servicing.

#### No engine shut down is carried out

Before each STOP phase, the system checks whether certain conditions have been met. No engine shut down takes place in the following situations.

- The engine has not reached the minimum temperature for the START STOP mode.
- > The temperature inside the vehicle has not reached the desired temperature set in the air-conditioning system/heating.
- > The external temperature is very low/high.
- > The windscreen defroster / ventilation is switched on at the maximum air temperature (air conditioning) setting.
- > The parking aid is activated.
- > The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The stationary vehicle is on a steep slope or a steep downhill section.
- > The idling speed is too high.
- > The steering angle is too large (manoeuvring).

The warning symbol  $\mathscr{P}$  appears in the instrument cluster display.

#### The automatic start procedure takes place again

During the STOP phase, the engine fires up without any active driver intervention, e.g. in the following situations.

- The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
- > The difference between the temperature setting of the air-conditioning system/heating and the temperature of the interior is too large.
- > The windscreen defroster / ventilation is switched on at the maximum air temperature (air conditioning) setting.
- The brake pedal was pressed several times (the pressure in the braking system is too low).
- > The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.

# Manually activating/deactivating the system



Fig. 80
Button for the START-STOP system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1.0 on page 85.

#### Activation/deactivation

> Press the symbol button @ > Fig. 80 .

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.



#### Note

If the system is deactivated during the STOP phase, the automatic start procedure takes place.

# City Safe Drive

### Introduction

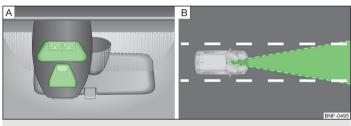


Fig. 81 Laser sensor/detection range

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activation/deactivation	88
Laser sensor	88
Special driving situations	89

The City Safe Drivesystem uses the laser sensor » Fig. 81 –  $\boxed{A}$  to take readings about the traffic situation in front of the vehicle at a range of around 10 metres (11 yards) » Fig. 81 –  $\boxed{B}$  in a vehicle speed range of 5 - -30 km/h (3 - -19 mph).

If the driver does not respond to an imminent collision, the City Safe Drive system can automatically apply the brakes to the vehicle to prevent a possible collision.

If the City Safe Drive system is currently slowing the vehicle down automatically, the warning light will flash  $\mathbb A$  quickly.

Automatic braking interventions can be terminated by pressing the clutch, accelerator or by moving the steering wheel.

If the City Safe Drive system is not currently available, or if there is a system fault, the warning light will flash  ${\mathbb A}$  slowly.

The following conditions cause the City Safe Drive system to become not available.

- > Taking bends tightly.
- > When fully pressing down the accelerator pedal.
- > When the City Safe Drivesystem function is switched off/faulty.
- > When the laser sensor is dirty, concealed or has overheated » page 88.
- > In the event of snow, heavy rain or fog.
- > When vehicles are travelling side by side.
- > When vehicles are crossing.
- > When vehicles are approaching in the same lane.
- > When the vehicles are very dirty and have a low level of reflection.
- > With high levels of dust.

# WARNING

- The City Safe Drive system cannot exceed physical and system-defined limits. The added convenience of the City Safe Drive system must never give you a reason to takes risks with regard safety. The driver is always the one responsible for braking in time.
- The City Safe Drive system cannot prevent accidents and injuries by itself.
- The City Safe Drive system can carry out unexpected braking interventions in complex driving situations, e.g. when vehicles scrape past each other.
- Taking the City Safe Drive system into account in one's own driving behaviour can lead to accidents and serious injuries. The City Safe Drive system is not a substitute for the driver's attention.
- Always adapt your speed and safety distance to the vehicle ahead to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The City Safe Drive system cannot detect persons, animals, or crossing vehicles or approaching vehicles in the same lane.
- The City Safe Drive system cannot exceed physical and system-defined limits. For instance, responses from the City Save Drive system can happen late or unexpectedly from the driver's perspective. Always stay attentive and take control when required.

# WARNING

- The laser beam from the laser sensor can cause serious eye injuries.
- Never use optical devices, e.g. a range-finder camera or magnifying glass to look into the laser sensor.
- The laser beam can also be active when the City Safe Drivesystem is switched off or is not available. The laser beam is not visible to the human eye.

# CAUTION

If the vehicle starts to roll after the City Safe Drive system is triggered, use the foot pedal to break.

# i Note

- When replacing the windscreen wiper blades, only use windscreen wiper blades approved by the manufacturer.
- Do not paint the laser sensor range on the windscreen. Do not cover it up with stickers or similar.
- Keep the laser sensor range free of dirt and ice at all times.
- Remove any snow with a hand-held brush and we recommend you remove any ice with a solvent-free deicing spray.
- If the laser sensor range on the windscreen has scratches, cracks, etc, replace the windscreen. Only use windscreens approved by the manufacturer. Carrying out repairs to the windscreen are not permissible.
- A damaged windscreen in the area of the laser sensor can lead to a failure of the City Safe Drive system.
- Repairing the laser sensor requires specialist expertise. We recommend the ŠKODA service partners.

#### Activation/deactivation



Fig. 82 Lower part of the centre console: Button for the City Safe Drive system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 86.

#### Activating

The City Safe Drivesystem is automatically switched on after turning on the ignition.

#### Disable and re-enable

The City Safe Drivesystem is switched off by pressing the button » Fig. 82 in the front centre console.

When the City Safe Drivesystem is switched off while the vehicle is travelling at a speed between 5–30 km/h (3-19 mph), the warning light  $\triangle$  **OFF**will light up in the instrument cluster display.

You can switch on the City Safe Drivesystem again with the button » Fig. 82 . The warning light  $\triangle$  0n lights up for around 5 seconds in the instrument cluster display.

#### The City Safe Drivesystem must be switched off in the following cases.

- > When the vehicle is being towed away.
- > When the vehicle is driven though an automatic car wash.
- > When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- > When the laser sensor is faulty.
- > After force is applied to the laser sensor.
- > When driving off-road (overhanging branches).
- > When objects are extending into the area above the bonnet, e.g. when a rood load sticks out far ahead.
- > When the windscreen is damaged in the region of the laser sensor.

#### Laser sensor



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!!** on page 86.

#### Possible impairment of the laser sensor

If the functioning of the laser sensor is impaired by e.g. heavy rain, snow or slush, the City Safe Drivesystem will temporarily shut down. The warning light 点 flashes slowly in the instrument cluster display.

If the laser sensor is no longer impaired, the City Safe Drive system will automatically switch back to ready. The warning light 魚 goes out.

## Special driving situations

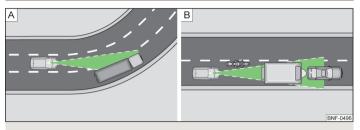


Fig. 83 Vehicle in the range of a curve/motorcycles driving ahead outside of the laser sensor range

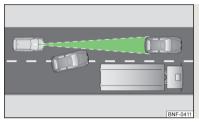


Fig. 84
Other vehicles changing lanes

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 86.

The following and similar situations require special attention of the driver:

### Driving around a bend

When driving into or out of "protracted" bends, it is possible for the laser sensor to respond to a vehicle in the adjacent lane » Fig. 83 -  $\boxed{\textbf{A}}$  causing it to apply the brakes to your vehicle.

### Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side are not detected by the laser sensor until they are in the range of the sensor » Fig. 83 - B. This is especially true for narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles.

#### Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles which move into your lane close to your vehicle can trigger an unexpected braking of the City Save Drivesystem » Fig. 84.

# Safety

# **Passive Safety**

### General information

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Safety equipment	90
Before setting off	90
What influences the driving safety?	91

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

# WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

### Safety equipment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 90.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

- > Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
- > Belt force limiters for the front seats.
- > Belt tensioners for the front seats.
- > Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.

- Head, thorax, driver and front seat passenger side airbag with head restraint function;
- > Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
- > Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
- > Height-adjustable rear head restraints;
- > Height-adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries if an airbag is activated in the event of an accident.

# Before setting off



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 90.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- > Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- > Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- > Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- > Secure all items of luggage » page 46, Luggage compartment.
- > Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- > Adjust the rear mirror and the front seat to your body size.
- Advise your passengers on the back seats to adjust the head restraints to their body size.
- > Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 103, Transporting children safely.
- Adopt the correct seated position » page 91, Correct seated position. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.
- > Correctly fasten the seat belt. Also inform passengers to fasten the seat belt correctly » page 96, Fastening and unfastening seat belts.

## What influences the driving safety?



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1. on page 90.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs.
- > Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- > Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- > Take regular breaks on long journeys at least every two hours.

# **Correct seated position**

### ☐ Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position for the driver	92
Correct seated position for the front passenger	92
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats	92
Examples of incorrect seated positions	92

# WARNING

General information

- The front seats and the head restraints must always be adjusted according to height, so that the occupants can be protected as effectively as possible.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to lifethreatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system risk of injury!

# WARNING

Information for the driver

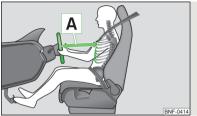
- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

# WARNING

Information for the front seat passenger

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

### Correct seated position for the driver



Fia. 85 Correct seated position for the driver



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 91.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A » Fig. 85between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm.
- Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
- Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
- > Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 96.

Driver seat adjustment » page 43, Adjusting the front seats.

# Correct seated position for the front passenger



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 91.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

- > Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
- > Correctly fasten the seat belt > page 96.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 101, Deactivating airbags.

Front passenger adjustment » page 43, Adjusting the front seats.

### Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warn-First read and obsertings I on page 91.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- > Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head.
- > Correctly fasten the seat belt > page 96.
- > Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 103, Transporting children safely.

### Examples of incorrect seated positions



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔢 on page 91.

Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if seat belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is movina.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise vourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- > Do not stand up.
- > Do not stand on the seats.
- > Do not kneel on the seats.
- > Do not tilt the seat backrest too far back.
- > Do not lean against the dash panel.
- > Do not lie on the rear seats.
- > Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- > Do not sit facing to the side.

- > Do not lean out of the window.

- > Do not put your feet out of the window.
  > Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
  > Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.
  > Do not allow anybody to travel in the footwell.
  > Do not drive without fastening your seat belt.

> Do not delay in the luggage compartment.

# Seat belts

# Using seat belts

#### Introduction



Fig. 86 **Driver wearing seat belt** 

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision	9
Fastening and unfastening seat belts	96

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 86.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

Occupants of a vehicle who have correctly fastened their seat belts have the major benefit of the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed as effectively as possible by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to the kinetic energy being reduced as effectively as possible. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 103, *Transporting children safely*.

# WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey even when driving in town! This also applies to the passengers seated at the rear risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 96.
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated page 91, Correct seated position.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

# WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct routing of the seat belt.

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

# WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the seat belts.

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt when closing the door.

# WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper use of the seat belts.

- Never use one seat belt to secure two persons (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.

### WARNING (Continued)

- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 45, Folding the rear seats forward.

# WARNING

Observe the following instructions for proper maintenance of the seat belts.

The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 121, Seat belts.

- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

# Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

# The physical principle of a frontal collision



Fig. 87 Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear passenger without a fastened seat belt



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 94.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The idea that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30-50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" to 4.8 tons (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt, are thrown forward and strike in an uncontrolled way parts of the interior of the car, such as steering wheel, dash panel or windscreen » Fig. 87 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened their seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated at the front » Fig. 87 –  $\blacksquare$ .

# Fastening and unfastening seat belts

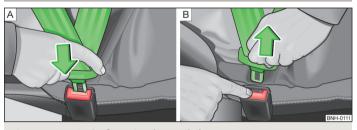


Fig. 88 Fastening/unfastening the seat belt



Fig. 89 Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 94.

#### Fastening

Correctly adjust the front seat before fastening the seat belt » page 91, Correct seated position.

- > Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
- > Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle » Fig. 88 A that is part of the seat until it clicks into place.
- > Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 89 –  $\boxed{c}$ .

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

On expectant mothers, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 89 –  $\boxed{\mathsf{D}}$ .

#### Releasing

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

- > Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 88 B, the lock tongue pops out.
- Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

# CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

# Inertia reels and belt tensioners

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reels	97
Belt tensioners	 97

### Inertia reels



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 96.

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

# WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

### **Belt tensioners**



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 96.

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal or side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

# WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

# Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

# Airbag system

# Description of the airbag system

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description	98
Airbag deployment	98

# WARNING

- An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 91, Correct seated position.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

# WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.

- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

# System description



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings III on page 98.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light \*\* in the instrument cluster » page 20.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

#### Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following modules.

- > Electronic control unit.
- > Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 99.
- > Side airbags Head-thorax » page 100;
- ➤ Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 20, 

  Airbag system.
- > Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 102.
- > Warning light for the front passenger airbag deactivation/activation in the middle of the dash panel » page 102.

# Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

# Airbag deployment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔢 on page 98.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rearend collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

#### **Deployment factors**

It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision. > Driver's front airbag.

> Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

> Head-Thorax side airbag on the crash side.

### In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:

- > the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
- > the hazard warning light is switched on;
- > all the doors are unlocked;
- > the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

# Airbag overview

# Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags	99
Side airbags Head-Thorax	100

## Front airbags

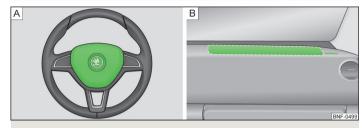


Fig. 90 Driver's airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dash panel

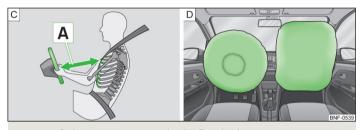


Fig. 91 Safe distance to steering wheel/inflated airbags

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 99.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel » Fig. 90 - A.

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the stowage compartment » Fig. 90 –  $\blacksquare$ .

When the airbags are deployed, they inflate in front of the driver and front passenger » Fig. 91 - D. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

# WARNING

Correct seated position

- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 91. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

# WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 102, Deactivating the front passenger airbag. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

# **WARNING**

General

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

### Side airbags Head-Thorax

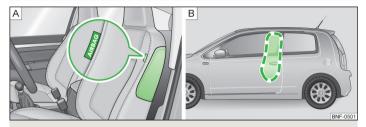


Fig. 92 Place of installation of the side airbag/deployment area of the side airbag



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 99.

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system Head-Thorax provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 92 - A.

When the side airbags » Fig. 92 - B are triggered, the belt tensioner is also deployed automatically on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the head and upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

### WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct seated position.

■ Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 104, Child safety and side airbag.

### WARNING (Continued)

- There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 103, Child seat.

# WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work carried out by a ŠKODA service partner or a professional specialist garage.

# WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Énsure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!

### WARNING (Continued)

- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

# **Deactivating airbags**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 101
Deactivating the front passenger airbag \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 102 ■

# **Deactivating airbags**



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

### Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forwards-facing child seat in some countries) » page 103, Transporting children safely.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- > If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 102.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

#### Monitoring the airbag system

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

#### Airbag deactivated using diagnostic equipment

The warning light # lights up for approx. 3 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.

#### Front passenger airbag deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment

- The warning light 💐 lights up for approx. 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.
- > The warning light PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 2 3 » Fig. 93 on page 102 lights up after the ignition has been turned on.

# Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

### Deactivating the front passenger airbag

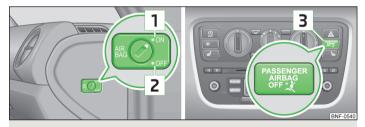


Fig. 93 Key switch for front passenger airbag/warning light for front passenger airbag activation/deactivation



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

#### Switching off

- > Switch off the ignition.
- > Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 2 » Fig. 93 OFF.
- > Check that warning light 3 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF % in the middle of the dash panel lights up after the ignition is switched on.

#### Switching on

- > Switch off the ignition.
- > Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 1 » Fig. 93 ON.
- > Check that warning light 3 PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF % in the middle of the dash panel does not light up after the ignition is switched on.

# WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning light PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ¾ flashes, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

# Transporting children safely

### Child seat

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat	104
Child safety and side airbag	104
Classification of child seats	105
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt	105

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. The ECE-R standard stands for: Economic Commission for Europe – Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

# WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

# WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 104, Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat.

# Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

# Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a backwards-facing child restraint system on a seat that is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause the child severe injury or even death.



Fig. 94 Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 103.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » H.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- > With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- > Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- > Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat.

# WARNING

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 101, Deactivating airbags.
- Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This is also clearly stated on the sticker which is located on the B column on the front passenger side » Fig. 94. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door. In some countries, the sticker is affixed to the front passenger sun visor.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

### Child safety and side airbag

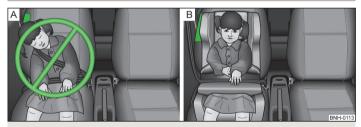


Fig. 95 Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured - risk from the side airbag/child properly protected by child seat



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 103.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag  $\gg$  Fig. 95 -  $\boxed{A}$ .

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 95 –  $\boxed{\mathbb{B}}$ .

# **WARNING**

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbaq risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags risk of injury!

1	
9-18 kg U	
<b>2</b> 15-25 kg U U	
3 22-36 kg U U	

U Child seat category "Universal" - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

## Classification of child seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1. on page 103.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

#### Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 103.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats
<b>0</b> up to 10 kg	U	U
<b>0+</b> up to 13 kg	U	U

# Fastening systems

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system	106
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system	106
Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system	107■

#### Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system

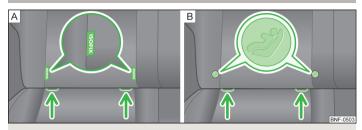


Fig. 96 Identification versions of anchor eyelets for child safety seats



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 105.

There are two lashing eyes between the rear exterior seat backrest and the surface of the seat itself on both sides for fixing the ISOFIXsystem » Fig. 96child seat in place.

# WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the anchor eyelets intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system risk to life!

### i

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

### Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 105.

Overview of the usability of child seats with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat <sup>a)</sup>	Front passenger seat	Rear seats
<b>0</b> up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU
	E		
<b>0+</b> up to 13 kg	D	X	IL-SU
up to 15 kg	С		

Group	Size class of the child seat <sup>a)</sup>	Front passenger seat	Rear seats
<b>1</b> 9-18 kg	D	X	
	С		IL-SU IUF
	В		
	B1		101
	А		

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

- IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The category "Semi-Universal" means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.
- IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.
- X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

### Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system

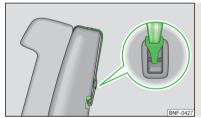


Fig. 97 Rear seat: TOP TETHER

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 105.

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt of a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the back of the rear seat backrests » Fig. 97.

# WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

### **General Maintenance**

# Vehicle care

### Service intervals

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview of service intervals	108
Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4	109
Variable service interval QI6	109
Information about the ŠKODA service	109

The Service Interval Display in the instrument cluster will remind you to carry out every service stipulated by the manufacturer at the right time, in order to avoid forgetting any.

A timely and adequate performance of servicing works is one of the requirements for the settlement of possible warranty claims.

The completion of services can be verified through the service schedule and the respective receipts.

The service intervals are matched to normal operating conditions.

In case of difficult operating conditions, it is necessary to have some servicing work performed before the date of the next service or between the service intervals stated. This applies mainly to the cleaning or the replacement of the air filter insert in regions with heavy dust pollution as well as checking and replacing the toothed belt, but also vehicles with diesel particle filter which can use the engine oil more intensely.

These severe conditions are:

- > Fuel containing sulphur
- > Frequent short trips
- > Longer idling mode of the engine (e.g. taxi vehicles)
- > Operation in areas with heavy dust pollution
- > Frequent trailer operation

- $\blacktriangleright$  Predominantly stop-and-go traffic as tends to occur in city driving, for example
- > Operation predominantly during winter.

A service consultant at the specialist garage will tell you whether the operating conditions of your vehicle make it necessary for such work to be carried out between the normal service intervals.

Different service charges may apply, depending on the scope of necessary works as well as the model, features and condition of your vehicle.

# i

#### Note

- The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the operating fluid, even during the warranty period, unless the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. warranty terms or other agreements state otherwise.
- You will be informed about the scope of the service with regard to a particular service event by the specialist garage.

### Overview of service intervals



Fig. 98 Vehicle data sticker: Service interval



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

The service interval specified by the manufacturer is indicated on the vehicle data sticker » Fig. 98 under the floor covering in the boot.

One of the following service intervals applies for your vehicle:

- > Fixed service interval QI1;
- > Fixed service interval QI2;
- > Fixed service interval QI3;
- > Fixed service interval QI4;
- > Variable service interval QI6.

In order to be able to operate a vehicle with a variable service interval, it must only be filled and topped up with the specified engine oil.

If this engine oil is not available, the oil change is subject to a fixed service interval. In this case, the vehicle **must** be changed to the fixed service interval.

# Note

- The corresponding motor oil specifications » page 130.
- A changeover from the variable service interval to the fixed service interval, or from the fixed service interval to the variable service interval, can be carried out by a specialist garage.

#### Fixed service intervals 011 - 014



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

Inspection	QI1 - QI4	First inspection after 2 years or 30,000 km <sup>a)</sup> , followed by one every year or 30,000 km <sup>a)</sup> .
		After 1 year or 15,000 km <sup>a)b)</sup>
	QI1	After 5,000 km or 1 year <sup>a)</sup> .
Oil change service	QI2	After 7,500 km or 1 year <sup>a)</sup> .
	QI3	After 10,000 km or 1 year <sup>a)</sup> .
	QI4	After 15,000 km or 1 year <sup>a)</sup> .
Brake fluid change	QI1 - QI4	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years.

- a) (Whichever comes first).
- b) Applies to Russia

# WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. When the brake fluid becomes too old, vapour bubbles may form in the brake system when the brakes are used hard. The efficiency of the brakes is then seriously affected - risk of accident!

#### Note

For diesel operation with a high sulphur content, the interval of engine oil change will be every 7,500 km. Please ask your specialist garage for information on the countries where diesel fuel has a high sulphur content.

#### Variable service interval QI6



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

The service intervals depend on how the vehicle is driven and the local conditions in which the vehicle is used. For example, your vehicle is subjected to different loads when driven over short distances than long distances. The service intervals are also variable.

Inspection	First inspection after 2 years or 30,000 km²), followed by one every year or 30,000 km²).
Oil change service	According to the service interval display (at the latest after 2 years or 30,000 km <sup>a</sup> ).
Brake fluid change	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years.

a) (Whichever comes first).



#### WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. When the brake fluid becomes too old, vapour bubbles may form in the brake system when the brakes are used hard. The efficiency of the brakes is then seriously affected - risk of accident!

### Information about the ŠKODA service



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 108.

There is an extensive servicing network made up of ŠKODA service partners at your disposal, for the maintenance of your vehicle.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories at their disposal.

All ŠKODA service partners operate in accordance with the latest guidelines and instructions of the manufacturer. All service work is therefore carried out on time and in accordance with the quality standards. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

In addition, the ŠKODA service partners offer an array of other services.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore recommend that you have your vehicle maintained by a ŠKODA service partner.

# Modifications, adjustments and technical alterations

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Tests required by law	111
ŠKODA Service Partners	111
ŠKODA Original Parts	111
ŠKODA Original Accessories	111
Spoiler	112
Airbags	112
Trailer operation	113

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out all modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO)

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 111 before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

### WARNING

- If work on your vehicle is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults risk of accident and serious injuries.
- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.
- The ŠKODA Partner does not assume any liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.

### WARNING

- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKÓDA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

# 🏂 Fo

#### For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

### Note

Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty service schedule.

### Tests required by law



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 110.

Many countries have legislation which require that the reliability and roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas composition of a vehicle must be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or checking stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA service partners have been informed about the necessary legal tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests in a service operation at the customer's discretion, or will ensure that these tests are carried out. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly at the customer's discretion, if they are designated for such a procedure. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA service partner beforehand.

The service consultant will tell you which areas, according to his appraisal, you should focus on in order that your vehicle may pass the technical test without any problems. In this way, you can avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

#### ŠKODA Service Partners



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔢 on page 110.

The ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

### **ŠKODA Original Parts**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🖪 on page 110.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, since these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. They correspond exactly to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations in regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in the batch production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products. Therefore, we recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production; the market is supplied with wear-and-tear parts and for at least 10 years with equipment parts.

ŠKODA service partners are liable for any ŠKODA original part defects for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, provided that nothing else was agreed in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the bill for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term may be verified.

#### **Body repairs**

ŠKODA vehicles are designed so that if the body suffers damage, it is only necessary to replace those parts which are in fact damaged.

Before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, however, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not such parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

### **ŠKODA Original Accessories**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings !! on page 110.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected such accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market. we are not able to assess or warrant the parts even though in some instances such parts may have a type approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products go through a fastidious process in the area of technical development (technical tests) and quality inspection (customer tests), and only if all tests are positive does the product become a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also provides expert advice, and professional fitting at the customer's discretion.

ŠKODA service partners are liable for any ŠKODA Genuine Part defects for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, provided that nothing else was agreed in the purchase contract or in any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the bill for these components for this period of time, so that commencement of the term may be verified.

In addition, ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products as well as those parts which are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

# Note

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of Original ŠKODA Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of offers for ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA partner web pages.

#### Spoiler



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 110.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a **spoiler** on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

- > For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- > We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA service partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

# WARNING

If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.

### Airbaas



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔢 on page 110.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

### WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system will then have to be replaced if the airbag is deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

### WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.

- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

### WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

# WARNING

The airbag control unit operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following instructions must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

### Trailer operation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 110.

The vehicle is not approved for towing a trailer. The vehicle is not factory-equipped with a towing device and it cannot be retrofitted with a towing device.

# WARNING

Never attach a towing device to the vehicle.

# Washing your car

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand	114
Automatic car wash systems	114
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner	114

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends on factors such as:

- > Frequency of use.
- > Parking situation (garage, under trees etc.).
- > Season.
- > Weather conditions.
- > Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

# WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency - risk of accident!
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off risk of accident!

# CAUTION

Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight - risk of paint damage.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

### Washing by hand

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 113.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft sponge, a washing glove or a washing brush. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

Only use a car shampoo for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leath-

# **CAUTION**

- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc.) - There is a risk of cuts!
- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.

#### Automatic car wash systems



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings III on page 113.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

### WARNING

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system.

### Washing with a high-pressure cleaner



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 113.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the spraying distance.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

#### WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!

# CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.
- $\blacksquare$  The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60  $^{\circ}\text{C}$  risk of damaging the vehicle.
- See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 116.

# Taking care of your vehicle exterior

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork	. 115
Plastic parts	116
Rubber seals	116
Chrome parts	116
Decorative films	116
Windows and exterior mirrors	. 117
Headlight lenses	. 117
Door lock cylinders	. 117
Cavity protection	. 117
Wheels	. 118
Underbody protection	. 118

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

### WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims risk of cuts!

# CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

### For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

# i Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

### Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 115.

Minor paint damage such as scratches, scuffs or stone chips should be treated immediately if possible, using **touch-up pens** or **sprays**.

#### Preserving the vehicle paintwork

A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

#### Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

# CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window quides.

### Plastic parts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 115.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

# CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

#### Rubber seals



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 115.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

Do not treat the door seals and window guides with any products.

# 1

#### CAUTION

Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

#### Chrome parts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 115.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

# CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

#### Decorative films



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1.0 n page 115.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water. Never use harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents, as this could damage the films.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner:

- The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
- > Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
- > The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
- > The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

# **L** CAUTION

In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

#### Windows and exterior mirrors



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 115.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

# CAUTION

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water risk of cracks forming in the glass.

- When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not to damage.
- Do not clean the inside of the rear window with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.

### Headlight lenses



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 115.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

### CAUTION

- Never wipe headlights to dry.
- Do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, as this may damage the protective paintwork and consequently cause cracks to form on the headlight lenses.
- Do not use any harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the headlights, as this could damage the headlight lenses.

### Door lock cylinders



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 115.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

# C

### CAUTION

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.

### **Cavity protection**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 115.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

# **WARNING**

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

#### Wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings !! on page 115.

#### Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

#### Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

# CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

#### **Underbody protection**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 115.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

When driving, it cannot be guaranteed that no damage to the **protective layer** will occur.

We recommend having the protective layer underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

# 1

#### WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

# Taking care of the interior

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather	119
Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara®	120
Seat covers	120
Seat belts	121

Regular and proper care helps to ensure efficiency and maintain the **value** of your vehicle.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

# WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children risk of poisoning!

# CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear window in the vicinity of the heating elements or the window aerial. These may get damaged.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

# 8

#### For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.



#### Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

#### Natural leather



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!!** on page 118.

Leather is a natural material with specific properties, and requires regular cleaning and maintenance.

The leather should be cleaned on a regular basis depending on the amount of wear-and-tear.

Dust and dirt in the pores and folds act as abrasive materials. This leads to severe corrosion and the premature brittleness of the leather surface.

We recommend that you remove dust **regularly and at short intervals** using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » !.

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather regularly and at suitable intervals using a suitable leather care product.

### CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.

- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.



#### Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers. ■

#### Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara®



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 118.

#### Artificial leather

Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

#### Fabric

Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, luggage compartment cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a specific cleaning agent to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

#### Alcantara®

Dust and fine dirt particles in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface.

If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the Alcantara® seat covers from the direct rays of the sun to prevent fading.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

# CAUTION

- Do not use any leather cleaners on Alcantara® seat covers.
- For Alcantara<sup>®</sup> seat covers do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the fabric from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked outside for long periods of time, cover the fabric to protect it from direct sunlight.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

#### Seat covers



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 118.

#### Electrically heated seats

Do not clean the covers **by moistening**, as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

#### Seats without seat heating

Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

# 1

#### **CAUTION**

- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats "from seam to seam".

### Seat belts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔢 on page 118.

The belt webbing must always be kept clean.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

Dirty belt webbing may impair the correct functioning of the inertia reel.

### WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liguids (e.g. acids).
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the belt webbing, seat belt connections, inertia reel or lock is detected, the
- seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.

  The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

# Inspecting and replenishing

#### **Fuel**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling	122
Unleaded petrol	123

Vehicles running on CNG (compressed natural gas) » page 123.

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are listed on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 99 on page 122.

# WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

# CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork risk of paint damage!
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. Is this not the case, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

### Refuelling



Fig. 99 **Fuel filler** 



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 122.

#### Open fuel filler flap

- > Open the fuel filler flap with one hand.
- > Hold the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube with one hand and unlock it by moving it to the left with the vehicle key.
- > Unscrew the filler cap by turning it to the left and place the cap onto the top of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 99.

#### Closing the filler cap

- > Turn the filler cap to the right until it clicks into place.
- > Hold the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube with one hand and lock it by turning the vehicle key to the right and remove the key.
- > Close the filler cap.

# CAUTION

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue filling the fuel tank otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.



The fuel tank has a capacity of about **35 litres**, containing a reserve of approx. **4 litres**.

### Unleaded petrol



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 122.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** in compliance with the **EN 228**<sup>n</sup> standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

#### Prescribed fuel - unleaded petrol min. 95 RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating 95 RON or higher.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91**, **92** or **93** RON, if petrol with the octane rating **95** RON is not available » ...

#### Fuel additives

Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard<sup>1)</sup> meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

# CAUTION

- Even filling the tank with leaded petrol that does not meet the standards once can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is used by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.

# CAUTION

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than 91 RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

# CAUTION

- In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. LRP(lead replacement petrol) fuels with metallic components may not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!
- Fuels with metallic content may not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!



- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of min. 95 RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than 95 RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

# Vehicles with CNG (compressed natural gas) mode

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling	124
Automatic switching from CNG to petrol mode	125
Natural gas as fuel	125 ▶

<sup>1)</sup> In Germany, DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded gasoline with octane number 95 and 91.

Regular gas system checks	12
Safe natural gas	12
Natural gas quality and consumption	12
CNG labels	12

# WARNING

- When operating a CNG-powered vehicle, the national legal requirements must be observed.
- If a fault occurs or a leak in the natural gas system is suspected or if you smell gas, proceed as follows:
  - Stop immediately and switch off the ignition (this will close the solenoid valves on the natural gas tanks automatically);
- Open the doors to ventilate the vehicle sufficiently;
- Immediately extinguish cigarettes, and remove and switch off other sparkor fire-causing objects from the vehicle immediately.
- Seek help from a specialist garage to correct the gas system fault.
- The following are considered faults on the gas system:
- Gas leakage from any part of the gas system as well as an error on the ventilation system.
- Continuous gas venting through the safety valves.
- Cracks or damage that could result in a gas leak.
- Fault in the reduction device, the pressure regulator, gas mixer or in the injection valves, the pressure gauge, the shut-off or check valves and tank fixtures.
- If gas flows into the gas mixer or into the injection valves though the engine is stopped.
- Exceeding the permissible limits for contaminants in the exhaust gas.
- Regular gas system checks must be carried out in order to operate a natural gas vehicle. The vehicle owner is responsible for properly conducted tests.
- The natural gas tanks must not be exposed to a heat source.
- Always switch off the ignition in case of an accident or vehicle fire!
- It is prohibited to drive into automatic car washes, enclosed storage places, garages and similar areas where it is specifically forbidden to enter with CNG vehicles.

### Refuelling

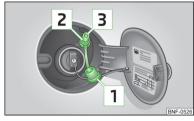


Fig. 100 Fuel filler



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 123.

The gas filler tube for refuelling with natural gas is located behind the fuel filler flap next to the petrol filler tube.

The filling couplings of the natural gas refuelling systems may differ in handling. When refuelling with natural gas at unfamiliar refuelling systems, you should seek help from trained fuel station staff. If unsure, have the refuelling done by trained fuel station staff.

The operating instructions of the refuelling system must always be followed.

#### Open fuel filler flap

- > Open the fuel filler flap with one hand.
- > Remove the cap 1 » Fig. 100 from the gas filler tube 2.
- > Plug the filling coupling of the refuelling system on the gas filler tube 2.

The fuel tank is full when the compressor of the refuelling system automatically switches off. To stop the refuelling operation prematurely, press the "Stop " button of the refuelling system.

#### Closing the filler cap

- Check that the sealing ring 3 » Fig. 100 has remained in the gas filler tube. If it has slipped onto the filling coupling, reinsert it into the gas filler tube.
- > Plug the cap 1 onto the gas filler tube.
- > Close the filler cap.

In the following situation, it is possible that the tank cannot be fully filled with natural das.

- At very high ambient temperatures. The natural gas refuelling systems have overheating protection. When the ambient temperature reaches a predefined value, the refuelling system automatically switches off.
- If the refuelling system has been in operation for a longer period, the filling pressure of the natural gas refuelling system slightly drops.

### WARNING

- Stop the engine before refuelling.
- Always switch off your mobile phone, do not smoke and do not use open flames when refuelling with natural gas - risk of explosion!
- When refuelling, never get into the vehicle. If you have to get into your vehicle in exceptional cases, close the door and touch a metal surface before you touch the filling coupling again. This will avoid electrostatic discharges, which may generate sparks. Sparks can cause a fire during refuelling.
- Natural gas is highly explosive and flammable. Incorrect refuelling or improper handling of natural gas can cause a fire, an explosion and injuries.

# Note

- The natural gas system of your vehicle is suitable both for fuelling from small compressors (slow fuelling) and for fuelling from natural gas stations with large compressors (quick fuelling).
- Noises that occur during refuelling represent no risk.
- If the vehicle is parked for a longer period of time immediately after refuelling, the situation may arise in which the pointer of the fuel tank gauge does not indicate exactly the same level as was the case immediately after refuelling when the engine is restarted. This is not due to any system leakages but a drop in pressure in the natural gas fuel tank due to technical reasons after a cooling phase directly after refuelling.
- For frequent short-haul traffic, especially at low outside temperatures, the vehicle is driven more frequently in petrol mode than in natural gas mode. This is why the petrol tank runs empty faster than the natural gas tank.
- The capacity of the natural gas tank is about 11 kg, of which about 1.5 kg are a
- The capacity of the petrol tank is about 10 I, of which about 5 I are a reserve.

### Automatic switching from CNG to petrol mode



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔲 on page 123.

The vehicle automatically switches over from CNG mode to petrol mode when the following conditions are met:

- > when starting the engine, if the coolant temperature is below 15 °C,
- > when the natural gas tank is empty,
- > after refuelling with natural gas.

### Natural gas as fuel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔢 on page 123.

Natural gas is an alternative fuel for motor vehicles. Its main component is methane (CH<sub>4</sub>). The rest is carbon dioxide and lower hydrocarbons.

The strict legal requirements for exhaust emissions of motor vehicles are decisive for the current significance of natural gas. In direct comparison to all other fossil fuels, natural gas is one of the fuels which cause the lowest emissions.

Natural gas is odourless and lighter than air. For safety reasons, it is saturated with odorous substances, so that is perceived even in very small amounts.

### Regular gas system checks



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warn-First read and observings on page 123.

Every two years, the following inspections must be carried out:

- > Check the condition of the fuel filler cap, filler neck and sealing ring, and clean sealing ring if necessary.
- > Check gas system for leaks.

The following checks must be carried out every four years:

> Check gas tank mounting for secure attachment and possible damage.

The gas tank must be filled prior to the regular gas system check.

### Safe natural gas



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 123.

The safety concept of the natural gas system ensures safe operation. It is equipped with the following security features.

- > At each natural gas tank, there is a solenoid valve that closes automatically after turning off the ignition or when running in petrol mode.
- A thermal fuse prevents uncontrolled rise in pressure in the natural gas tank in case of fire.
- A flow limiter prevents sudden emptying of the natural gas tank in case the pressure system is damaged.
- All the attachment points and materials are designed for maximum safety.

#### Natural gas quality and consumption



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 123.

Natural gas is divided into quality groups H-gas and L-gas. The two types of gas are subdivided according to their calorific value and nitrogen and carbon dioxide contents. H-gas has a higher calorific value and lower nitrogen or carbon dioxide content than L-gas.

The higher the calorific value of natural gas, the lower is the consumption. However, the calorific value and the nitrogen and carbon dioxide contents can vary within a quality group. Therefore, the consumption of the vehicle may even vary when driving with only one natural gas quality (either only H-gas or L-gas).

The engine control of your vehicle automatically adjusts to the different natural gas qualities. Therefore both natural gas qualities can be mixed in the fuel tank. It is therefore not necessary to run the natural gas tank completely empty to fill up another quality.

#### **CNG** labels





Fig. 101 CNG label

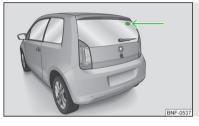


Fig. 102 Position of the CNG label



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 123.

In some countries, national legislation requires that vehicles with CNG operation be identified by one of the listed labels » Fig. 101.

Position of the CNG label » Fig. 102.

### **Engine compartment**

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet	128
Engine compartment overview	129
Radiator fan	129
Windscreen washer system	129

### WARNING

Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

# WARNING

The following instructions must be followed before starting work in the engine compartment:

- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position N.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

# WARNING

The following instructions must be followed when working in the engine compartment.

- Keep children clear of the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!

### WARNING (Continued)

- Do not touch any hot engine parts risk of burns!
- The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always store the coolant additive securely in its original container, and in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

### WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed at all times when working in the engine compartment while the engine is running.

- Pay particular attention to rotating engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition system risk to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts - risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

# WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed if work has to be carried out on the fuel or electrical systems.

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

### WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep fluids in their original containers and keep securely out of the reach of children!
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient risk of injury!
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover)
   risk of fire!
- The bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. Therefore, the lock must always be checked after closing the bonnet in order to ensure that it has engaged properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet risk of accident!

### CAUTION

- Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!
- Never open the bonnet using the locking lever.

# For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

### Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any guestions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the correct specifications can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

### Opening and closing the bonnet

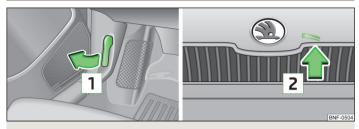


Fig. 103 Bonnet release lever

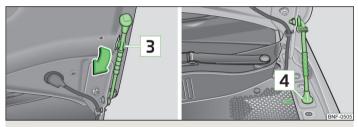


Fig. 104 Securing the bonnet



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 127.

#### Opening

Pull the release lever under the dash panel in the direction of the arrow
 Fig. 103.

**Before opening** the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork could be damaged.

- > Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 103 and the bonnet is unlocked.
- > Grab hold of the bonnet and lift.

> Take the bonnet support out of its holder 3 » Fig. 104 in the direction if the arrow and secure the opened bonnet by inserting the end of the support in the opening 4 designed for it.

#### Closing

- > Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Insert the bonnet support into the holder 3 designed for this purpose » Fig. 104.
- Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm do not push it in.

# WARNING

Check that the bonnet is closed properly.

# CAUTION

Never open the bonnet using the locking lever » Fig. 103.

### Engine compartment overview

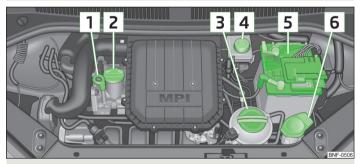


Fig. 105 Schematic diagram: Engine compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 127.

1	Engine oil dipstick	. 131
2	Engine oil filler opening	. 131
3	Coolant expansion reservoir	132

4	Brake fluid reservoir	133
5	Vehicle battery	134
6	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	129

#### Radiator fan



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 127.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

# !

#### WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

### Windscreen washer system



Fig. 106 Engine compartment: Windscreen washer fluid reservoir



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 127.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment and contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window.

The capacity of the windscreen washer fluid reservoir is approximately 3 litres.

Water alone is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories (with antifreeze in winter), which will remove any stubborn dirt.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

# CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives he added to the windscreen washer fluid
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when refilling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

### **Engine oil**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specifications and capacity	130
Checking the oil level	131
Replenishing	131
Changing	131

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings » page 131.

### WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 127.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible ® to top up the engine oil under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above level 🖪 » Fig. 107 on page 131, 🚳 do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

### CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil - risk of serious damage to the engine parts!

### Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

### Specifications and capacity



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 130.

#### Specifications and capacity (in I)

Engine	Specification	Filling level
1.0 l/44 kW	VW 502 00, VW 504 00 <sup>a)</sup>	3.4
1.0 l/55 kW	VW 502 00, VW 504 00 <sup>a)</sup>	3.4
1.0 l/50 kW - CNG	VW 502 00	3.4

a) Optional engine oil specifications.

# Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

### Checking the oil level

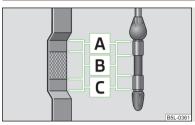


Fig. 107 **Dipstick** 



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 130.

The dipstick indicates the level of oil in the engine » Fig. 107.

#### Checking the oil level

Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.

> Switch off the engine.

Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.

- > Open the bonnet.
- > Pull out the dipstick.
- > Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
- > Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

### Oil level within range

No oil must be refilled.

#### Oil level within range B

Oil can be refilled. Afterwards, the oil level can lie in the range A.

#### Oil level within range C

The engine must be topped up with oil so that the oil level at least reaches the range  $\boxed{\mathbf{B}}$ .

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as  $0.5\,l/1000\,km$  depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 kilometres.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals. We recommend after each time you refuel or prior to making a long journey.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range A, but not above, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The warning light in the instrument cluster will indicate whether the oil level is too low » page 17, \* Engine oil. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

# ! (

### **CAUTION**

The oil level must not exceed the range  $\boxed{\mathbf{A}}$  » Fig. 107 - there is a risk of damaging the exhaust system!

### Replenishing



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 130.

- > Check the oil level » page 131.
- > Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 105 on page 129.
- Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 130.
- > Check the oil level » page 131.
- > Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

### Changing



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\blacksquare$  on page 130.

The engine oil must be changed according to prescribed service intervals » page 108 or according to service interval display » page 12.

### Coolant

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Capacity	132
Checking the coolant level	132
Replenishing	133

The coolant consists of water with coolant additive. This mixture guarantees anti-freeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents lime formation.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40%.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50%.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the concentration of coolant additive can be increased up to a maximum of 60% (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, only use the antifreeze with the title given on the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 108 on page 132.

# WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 127.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible ② to top up the coolant under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

### CAUTION

- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.

- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the corrosion protection.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 108 on page 132.
- If a fault causes the engine to overheat, we recommend visiting a specialist garage, as otherwise serious engine damage may occur.

#### Capacity



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 132.

#### Coolant capacity (in litres)

Petrol engines	Filling level
1.0 ltr./44 kW MPI	4.2
1.0 ltr./55 kW MPI	4.2
1.0 l/50 kW - CNG	4.2

### Checking the coolant level



Fig. 108
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 132.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

- > Switch off the engine.
- > Open the bonnet » page 128.

Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle » Fig. 108. The coolant level when the engine is cold must lie between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings. The level may also rise slightly above the "MAX" marking when the engine is warm.

If the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank is too low, this is indicated by the warning light  $\bot$  lighting up in the instrument cluster » page 18,  $\bot$  Coolant. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

#### Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

#### Replenishing



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 132.

Only top up with new coolant.

- > Switch off the engine.
- > Allow the engine to cool.
- > Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap carefully.
- > Replenish the coolant.
- > Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available in an emergency. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

### **Brake fluid**

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

### WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 127.
- If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking » Fig. 108 on page 132,
   do not continue your journey there is the risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid the function of the brake system may be impaired risk of accident!

# CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

# Note

The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.

### Checking the brake fluid level

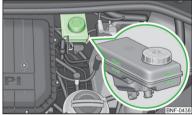


Fig. 109
Engine compartment: Brake fluid
reservoir



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 133.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

- > Switch off the engine.
- > Open the bonnet.
- > Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 109.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this is shown by the indicator light ① » page 16, ② Braking system lighting up in the instrument cluster.

### Changing



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 133.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment.

Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system.

The water content lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications: > VW 50114:

> VW 50114; > FMVSS 116 DOT4.

### Vehicle battery

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

This chapter contains information on the following subjects.	
Checking the battery electrolyte level	135
Operation in winter	136
Charging	136
Replace	137
Disconnecting and reconnecting	137
Automatic load deactivation	137

#### Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Importance
(8)	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
<b>®</b>	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
<b>®</b>	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

### WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the general applicable safety rules as well as the warning instructions outlined below.

- Keep children away from the vehicle battery.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, skin cracks).
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

### WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with naked flames or lights.
- It is prohibited to smoke or carry out any activities that produce sparks.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels risk of explosion and chemical burns.

# WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object or cable) creates a short circuit risk of melting the lead bars, and risk of explosion, battery fire and acid splashes.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices.
   Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all of the electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal ( –) of the battery.

### CAUTION

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.

### CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the vehicle first disconnect the negative terminal ( -) and only then the positive terminal ( +) of the battery.
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, connect the positive terminal (+) first and then the negative terminal (-) of the battery. Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork risk of damage to the paintwork.

- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. The battery discharge can be prevented by disconnecting the negative terminal ( –) of the battery or by ensuring the battery is continuously charged with very low charging current.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

# 8

#### For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.



#### Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

### Checking the battery electrolyte level



Fig. 110
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 134.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the so-called magic eye  $\gg$  Fig. 110 , the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

- > Black colour electrolyte level is correct.
- > Colourless or light yellow colour electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.

- > High external temperatures.
- > Longer day trips.
- > After each charge.

# CAUTION

For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

# Note

The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

### Operation in winter



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 134.

The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

### Charging



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 134.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

- > Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.
- Only when performing a "quick-charge", disconnect both battery cables (first "negative", then "positive").
- Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- > Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- > Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- > Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery using low amperages (for example from a mini-charger). **Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer**.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

It is necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, known as "rapid charging".

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

# WARNING

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.

### CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » page 152, Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system.

### Note

We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be rapid charged by a specialist garage.

### Replace



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 134.

When replacing a battery, the new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, amperage and be the same size. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

### Disconnecting and reconnecting



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 134.

On disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free:

Operation	Operating measure
Enter radio code number	» Radio manual
Setting the clock	» page 14
Data in the multifunction display are deleted.	» page 13



#### Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage in order to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems.

#### Automatic load deactivation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 134.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is put under high levels of strain. This manifests itself by the following.

- The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
- > Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

# !

#### CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.



#### Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

### Wheels

# Tyres and wheel rims

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Service life of tyres	13'
New tyres	14
Unidirectional tyres	14
Spare wheel	14
Full wheel trim	14
Wheel bolts	14
Wheel bolts	14

# WARNING

- The national legal regulations must be observed for the use of tyres.
- Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains and the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.

# WARNING

The following instructions for the use of tyres must be observed.

- For the first 500 km, new tyres do not yet provide optimum grip, and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving risk of accident!
- Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on all four wheels.
- For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *load bearing capacity* for fitted tyres risk of accident!
- Never exceed the maximum permissible speed for fitted tyres risk of accident!
- Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling risk of accident!

### WARNING (Continued)

- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction may impair the road safety of your vehicle risk of accident!

### WARNING

Observe the following information regarding tyre damage and wear.

- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres risk of accident!
- Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.
- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement "swimming" on a wet road surface).

### WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the tyre inflation pressure.

- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- Insufficient or excessive inflation pressure impairs handling risk of accident!
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.

# WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the wheel bolts.

- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never apply grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque for the wheel bolts is 110 Nm for steel and light alloy wheel rims.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to an insufficient tightening torque, the rims may come loose when the car is moving - risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- If the wheel bolts are handled incorrectly, the wheel may come loose when the car is moving - risk of accident!

# WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the spare wheel.

- Only use the spare wheel for as long as is necessary.
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel attached.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.

### CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » page 141, Spare wheel.
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost valve caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or with the opposite direction of rotation, drive carefully as the optimal characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.

# For the sake of the environment

Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

# Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

### Service life of tyres

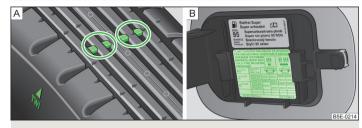
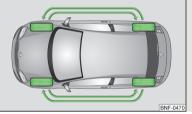


Fig. 111 Schematic diagram: Tyre tread with wear indicators/open fuel filler flap with a table detailing the tyre sizes and tyre inflation pressures



Fia. 112 Replacing wheels



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 138.

The service life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style and other circumstances. Following the advice below can extend the service life of your tyres.

#### Tyre pressure

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre pressures for tyres are shown on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 111

The tyre pressure for the spare wheel should correspond to the highest pressure specified for your vehicle.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

With greater additional load, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

#### Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

#### Balancing wheels

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

#### Wheel alignment errors

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear of the tyres.

#### Tyre damage

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre tread immediately.

#### Replacing wheels

If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend replacing the front wheels with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 112 . You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you swap the tyres every 10,000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to ensure optimal service life for the tyres.

#### Storing tyres

Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

#### Wear indicators

The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are located multiple times depending on the make and are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre » Fig. 111 - [A]. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

#### Tyre age

Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Therefore, we recommend not using summer or winter tyres older than 6 or 4 years old respectively.

### **New tyres**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 138.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible, replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

#### Explanation of tyre markings 175/65 R 14 82 T

What this means is:

175	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 111 on page 139 - 🖪
65	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 111 on page 139 - B
R	Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial » Fig. 111 on page 139 - B
14	Diameter of wheel in inches » Fig. 111 on page 139 - B
82	Load index » !
T	Speed symbol » !

The date of manufacture is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the *inside*). e.g. **DOT ... 10 13 ..** 

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2013.

#### Load index

This indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

**81** 462 kg **82** 475 kg

**83** 487 kg

**85** 515 ka

140

545 ka 87

615 ka 92 630 ka

93 650 ka

#### Speed symbol

This indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

150 km/h

0 160 km/h

170 km/h

180 km/h

т 190 km/h

u 200 km/h

н 210 km/h

# **CAUTION**

The information about the load index and the speed symbol is listed in your vehicle documents.

### Unidirectional tyres



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 🔢 on page 138.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following:

- > Increased driving stability.
- > Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
- > Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

### Spare wheel



Fia. 113 Luggage compartment: Spare wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 138.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 113.

#### Take out the wheel

- > Open the boot lid.
- > Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
- > Remove the box with the tool kit.
- > Unscrew the bolt » Fig. 113 in a counter-clockwise direction.
- > Take out the wheel.

#### Stow the wheel

- > Stow the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well with the rim facing down.
- > Screw the bolt » Fig. 113 in a clockwise direction until the wheel is safely secured.
- > Place the box with the tool kit back into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
- > Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
- > Close the boot lid.

Fit a wheel in the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted » 🛄.

#### Spare wheel

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

- > The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- > Be particularly observant when driving.
- > The inflation pressure for the temporary spare wheel is identical to the maximum inflation pressure for the standard tyres.
- > Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for long-term use.

## WARNING

- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

## CAUTION

Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.

#### Full wheel trim



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ... on page 138.

#### Pulling off

- > Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim
- > Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

#### Installing

- > Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
- > Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

## CAUTION

- Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. Avoid heavy impacts when the trim has not yet been inserted into the wheel rim. This could cause damage to the guide and centring elements of the trim.
- When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, ensure that it is in the hole in the valve area » page 148, Securing wheels against theft.
- If wheel trims are retrofitted it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

#### Wheel bolts



Fig. 114
Remove the cap



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 138.

#### Pulling off

- > Push the extraction pliers » page 144 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap » Fig. 114.
- > Remove the cap.

#### Installing

> Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

#### Wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 138.

Wheels and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels rims, e.g. light alloy wheel rims or wheels with winter tyres, you must also use the matching wheel bolts with the correct length and dome shape. The right fastening of wheels depends on this.

## Winter operation

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres	. 143
Snow chains	143■

### Winter tyres



Fitting winter tyres will significantly improve the handling of your vehicle when driving in wintry road conditions. Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of wide tyres or high-speed tyres.

In order to achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all 4 wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

## 8

### For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

#### Snow chains



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 143.

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Tyre size	Rim
165/70 R14	5J x 14 ET 35

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 15 mm.

Remove the **full wheel trims** before installing the snow chains.

## CAUTION

- The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.
- Remove the **full wheel trims** before installing the snow chains.

## Do-it-yourself

# Emergency equipment and self-help

## **Emergency equipment**

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_144

Vehicle tool kit \_\_\_\_\_\_\_144

## First aid kit and warning triangle



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 144.

The warning triangle can be stowed away underneath the floor covering of the luggage compartment.

## WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

## Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

### Vehicle tool kit

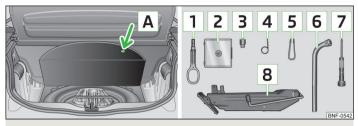


Fig. 115 Boot: Storage compartment for vehicle tool kit vehicle tool kit



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 144.

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack with sticker are housed in a box in the spare wheel or in the compartment for the spare wheel underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

Lift up the floor covering at the opening  $\boxed{A}$  » Fig. 115.

The components of the vehicle tool kit (if included) » Fig. 115.

- 1 Towing eye
- 2 Replacement bulb set
- 3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
- 4 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
- Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
- 6 Wheel wrench
- 7 Screwdriver
  - Car jack
- Screw the car jack back into its initial position after use in order to store it back in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

## WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances use it to lift heavier vehicles or other loads risk of injury!
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the luggage compartment.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

## Changing a wheel

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preliminary work	145
Changing a wheel	146
Follow-up work	146
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts	146
Raising the vehicle	147
Securing wheels against theft	148

## WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- The following instructions must be followed if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres or rims that differ from the factory-fitted ones » page 140, New tyres.

## WARNING

Observe the following instructions for lifting the vehicle.

- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised risk of injury.

## CAUTION

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 110 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are fastened too tightly, this can cause damage to the antitheft wheel bolt or the adapter.

## Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

## Preliminary work



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1 on page 145.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel:

> Let all of the occupants get out. While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).

- > Switch off the engine.
- > Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or, for an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position N.
- > Firmly apply the handbrake.
- > Remove the vehicle tool kit » page 144 and the spare wheel » page 141 from the boot.

### Changing a wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 145.

- > Remove the full wheel trim » page 142 or caps » page 142.
- > First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts » page 146.
- Iack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » page 147.
- > Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
- > Remove the wheel carefully.
- > Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
- > I ower the vehicle.
- > Alternately tighten wheel bolts opposite (diagonally) with the wheel wrench. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last » page 146.
- > Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

## Note

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 138.

### Follow-up work



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 145.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

- > Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special bolt » page 141.
- > Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
- > Check the tyre pressure on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
- > Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
- > Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

## Note

- If it is determined that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing the wheel, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening toraue.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has heen checked.

## Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

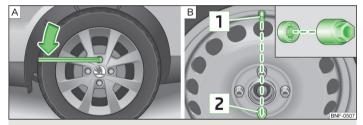


Fig. 116 Changing a wheel: Undoing the wheel bolts/installation location of the anti-theft wheel bolt



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 📙 on page 145.

#### Loosening

- > Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop<sup>1)</sup>.
- > Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about one turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 116 - A.

<sup>1)</sup> Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 148.

#### **Tightening**

- > Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop<sup>1)</sup>.
- > Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 116 Auntil it is tight.

For a wheel with full wheel trim, the **anti-theft wheel bolt** must be screwed in at position 2 » Fig. 116 opposite the valve 1. Otherwise the full wheel trim cannot be installed.



Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) provided that the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come off and fall down – risk of injury!

## Note

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

## Raising the vehicle



Fig. 117 Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

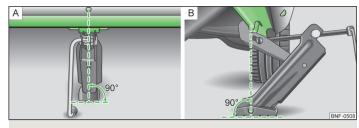


Fig. 118 Attach lifting jack



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 145.

Position the car jack below the jacking point that is closest to the faulty wheel » Fig. 117. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill.

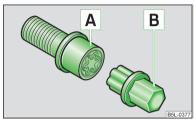
- > Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw is positioned below the vertical web of the lower sill.
- > Align the lifting jack so that its claw grasps the web » Fig. 118 B.
- > Support the base plate of the jack with its entire surface resting on level ground and ensure that the lever is located in a vertical position to the area where the claw grasps the web » Fig. 118 - A.
- > Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

## WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the attachment points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

 $<sup>^{1)}</sup>$  Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 148.

## Securing wheels against theft



Fia. 119 Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings II on page 145.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter » page 144.

- > Pull off the full wheel trim from the wheel rim or the cap from the anti-theft wheel holt.
- Insert the adapter B » Fig. 119 with its toothed side fully into the inner toothing of the safety wheel bolt A until the stop so that only the outer hexagon is juttina out.
- > Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
- > Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 146.
- > After removing the adapter, reinstall the full wheel trim or place the cap onto the anti-theft wheel bolt.
- > Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

### Note

- Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Original Parts if necessary.
- We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

## Tyre repair

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit	_ 149
Preparations for using the breakdown kit	_ 149
Sealing and inflating the tyre	_ 149
Check after 10 minutes' driving	_ 150

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit is **never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

- > There is damage to the rim.
- > The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
- The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
- > There is damage to the tyre wall.
- > Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
- > If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

## WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard
- Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Check the tyre pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.

### For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

## Note

- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
- Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

### Breakdown kit

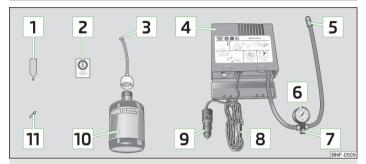


Fig. 120 Components of the breakdown kit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 148.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

### Components of the breakdown kit

- 1 Valve remover
- Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
- 3 Inflation hose with plug
- 4 Air compressor
- 5 Tyre inflation hose
- 6 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
- 7 Air release valve
- 8 ON and OFF switch
- 9 12 volt cable connector

- 10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
- 11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover  $\boxed{1}$  has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core. This is the only way in which you can remove and re-install the valve core from the tyre valve. The same also applies to the replacement valve core  $\boxed{n}$ .

### Preparations for using the breakdown kit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 148.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

- > Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- > Let all of the occupants get out. While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
- > Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the **selector lever** for the automatic gearbox **into position N**.
- > Firmly apply the handbrake.
- > Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 148.
- > Remove the breakdown kit from the luggage compartment.
- > Stick the sticker  $\boxed{2}$  » Fig. 120 on page 149 on the dash panel in view of the driver.
- > Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. screw or nail, from the tyre.
- > Unscrew the valve cap.
- > Use the valve remover 1 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

### Sealing and inflating the tyre



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 148.

#### Sealing

> Forcefully shake the tyre inflator bottle 10 » Fig. 120 on page 149 several times.

- > Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 clockwise. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
- > Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
- > Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
- > Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
- > Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 1.

#### Inflating

- Screw the tyre inflation hose 5 » Fig. 120 on page 149 of the air compressor firmly onto the tyre valve.
- > Check that the air release valve 7 is closed.
- > Start the engine and run it in idle.
- > Plug the connector 9 into 12 Volt socket » page 52, 12-volt power socket.
- > Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 8.
- Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !!
- > Switch off the air compressor.
- If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.
- > Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
- > Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 5 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
- If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit »
  I.
- > Switch off the air compressor.
- > Remove the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 150.

### WARNING

- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated there is a risk of injury.
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials there is a risk of fire.
- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. ② Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

## CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – there is a risk of overheating. Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

## Check after 10 minutes' driving



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 148.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

#### If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

> Do not drive the vehicle! You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

#### If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

- Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).
- Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

## Jump-starting

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle	151
Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system	152▶

## WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle there is a risk of explosion.
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 127, Engine compartment.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other there is a risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle there is a risk of short circuit.
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery there is a risk of caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, lit cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery there is a risk of explosion.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels risk of explosion and chemical burns.

## CAUTION

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- $\blacksquare$  The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

## Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

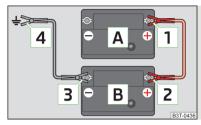


Fig. 121 Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings I on page 150.

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. Jump-start cables are required for this purpose.

#### The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- > Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 121.
- > Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
- > Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
- > Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

### Starting engine

- > Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- > Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- > Disconnect the cables in exactly the reverse order to the one described above.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

#### Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

**Positive cable** – colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

**Negative cable** – colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

### Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system



Fig. 122 Engine earth: START-STOP system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings H on page 150.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable must only be connected to the engine earthing point » Fig. 122.

## Towing the vehicle

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye \_\_\_\_\_\_ 153

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

A **tow bar** is the safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimises any shocks. Only use a **tow rope** if a suitable tow bar is not available.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

#### Driver of the tow vehicle

- > Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automated transmission.
- On vehicles with a manual transmission, only push down on the accelerator pedal once the rope is taught.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

#### Driver of the towed vehicle

- Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
- > Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position N if the vehicle is fitted with an automated transmission.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

## CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 150, Jump-starting.
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the drive wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- While towing, take care to avoid impermissibly high tensile forces or jerky loads. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar only to the towing eye » page 153.

## i Note

- We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.
- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eve being unscrewed out of your vehicle.

## Front towing eye

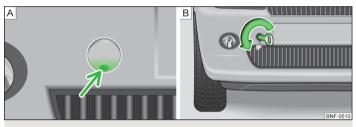


Fig. 123 Front bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 152.

The towing eye is stored in the box of the vehicle tool kit.

- > Press on the lower area of the cover (arrow) » Fig. 123  $\blacksquare$  to loosen the latch of the cover.
- > Remove the cap from the front bumper and leave it hanging on the vehicle.
- Screw in the towing eye by hand up to the stop » Fig. 123 B. For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.
- To re-fit the cover after removing the towing eye, first insert the cover in the bottom region then carefully press on the upper area of the cover. The cap must engage firmly.

# !

### CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

## Fuses and light bulbs

#### **Fuses**

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses on the underside of the dash panel	154
Fuses in the engine compartment	_ 156
Fuses in the dash panel	156

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 154, Fuses on the underside of the dash panel, » page 156, Fuses in the engine compartment, or » page 156, Fuses in the dash panel.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
purple	3
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40

# WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 127, Engine compartment.

## CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the same amperage.

#### Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- There can be several consumer devices for one fuse, depending on the vehicle's equipment.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.
- Multiple power consuming devices can share a single fuse.

## Fuses on the underside of the dash panel



Fig. 124 Underside of the dash panel: Fuse box / schematic diagram of the fuse box



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings III on page 154.

The fuses are located underneath the steering wheel on the underside of the dash panel » Fig. 124.

### Replacing fuses

Press the button 1 » Fig. 124.
 Push the lid in the direction of the arrow.

> 2 Remove the bracket.

> Place the bracket on the respective fuse and pull this out.

> Insert a new fuse.

Replace the bracket at the original position.
 Fold the cover upwards against the direction of the arrow.
 Close the cover until it clicks into place.

## Fuse assignment on the underside of the dash panel

No.	Power consumer
1	Telephone, radiator fan, instrument cluster, engine control unit
2	Diagnostic port, air compressor, bar with buttons, control unit for air conditioning
3	Clutch pedal switch, brake pedal switch
4	Switch illumination, number plate light
5	Steering column switch, central control unit
6	Headlamp beam adjustment, exterior mirror adjustment
7-8	Automated transmission
9	Airbag, bar with buttons
10	Park Assist
11	Headlights
12	The rear fog light
13	Headlights
14	Rear window wiper
15	Light switch
16	Steering force assistance
17	Windscreen washer
18	Reverse light switch
19	Injection valves, coolant pump
20	ABS/ESP
21	Parking lights,
22	Daytime running lights
23	Headlights
24	Flasher

No.	Dawer consumer
	Power consumer
25	Windscreen Wiper and Washer System
26	Not assigned
27	Interior lighting
28	Diagnostic connector
29	Central control unit
30	Exterior mirror heater
31	Radiator fan, lambda probe
32	Blinking light, brake light, daytime running lights, rear light
33	Main beam
34	Main beam
35	Fuel pump
36	Cigarette lighter, 12-volt power socket
37	Air blower for heating and air conditioning
38	Radio
39	Panoramic sliding roof, horn
40	Engine control unit
41	Central locking system
42	Ignition module
43	Seat heaters
44	Fuel pump
45	Light switch
46	Rear window heater
47	Windows
48	Horn
49	Windscreen wipers
50	Fog lights, headlight
51	Power windows

## Fuses in the engine compartment

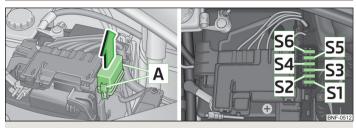


Fig. 125 Distribution board cover/fuses



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 11 on page 154.

The fuses are located underneath a cover next to the vehicle battery » Fig. 125.

#### Replacing fuses

- > Press the locking keys of cover **A** together simultaneously.
- > Push out the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- > Replace the appropriate fuse.
- > Insert the cover in the direction counter to the arrow.
- > Close the cover until it clicks into place.

#### Fuse assignment in engine compartment

No.	Power consumer
S1	ABS/ESP
S2	Radiator fan
S3	Control unit for radiator fan, ignition
54	ABS/ESP
S5	Central control unit, battery management
S6	Ignition lock, starter

### Fuses in the dash panel

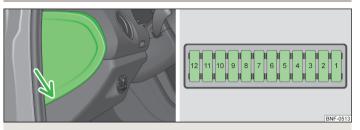


Fig. 126 Distribution board cover/fuses



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 154.

On vehicles with the START-STOPsystem, the fuses are on the left side of the dash panel behind a cover.

#### Replacing fuses

- Insert a suitable flat object, such as a screwdriver, into the gap in the arrow area » Fig. 126.
- > Carefully pry off the cover and remove it.
- > Replace the appropriate fuse.
- > Close the cover until it clicks into place.

#### Fuse layout on the panel side

No.	Power consumer
1	ABS/ESP
2	Instrument cluster
3	Radio, diagnosis
4	DC-DC voltage converter, starter relay, bar with buttons
5	Not assigned
6	Not assigned
7	Not assigned
8	Not assigned
9	Headlights
10	Headlights

No.	Power consumer	
11	Starter	
12	DC-DC voltage converter, ABS, instrument cluster, radio	

### **Bulbs**

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Headlights	157
Replacing the bulb for the side turn signal lights	158
Replacing the bulb for the fog light	158
Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light	159
Tail light	159

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- > Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- > Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
- A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

## WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 127, Engine compartment.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- The H4 bulb is pressurised and may explode during a bulb replacement risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.

## CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

## Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main or low beam.
- In the case of a defective CD player, visit a specialist garage.

## Headlights

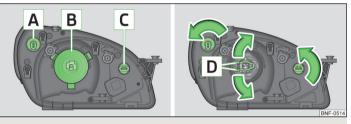


Fig. 127 Left headlight - engine compartment: Arrangement/lamp removal



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!!** on page 157.

Open the bonnet before replacing the bulb in the front headlight » page 128, Opening and closing the bonnet.

#### Bulb arrangement in the front headlight

- A Front turn signal light » Fig. 127
- B Low beam and main beam

#### C - Parking and daytime running light

#### Changing the bulb for the front turn signal light

- Turn the bulb holder A » Fig. 127 anti-clockwise up to the stop and remove.
- > Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in anti-clockwise up to the stop and remove.
- > Insert a new bulb into the socket and turn clockwise to the stop.
- Insert the lamp holder with the new bulb into the headlamp and turn it clockwise until it stops.

### Replacing the bulb for low beam and main beam

- > Remove the connector on the bulb B » Fig. 127.
- > Remove the rubber cover.
- Press the circlip D in the direction of the headlamp and then unhook in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the light bulb and insert a new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the light bulb socket fit into the recesses at the headlight.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

#### Replacing the bulb for the front parking light and daylight running light

- > Turn the bulb holder C » Fig. 127 up to the stop in an anti-clockwise direction and remove.
- > Remove the faulty bulb from the socket.
- > Insert a new bulb into the socket.
- Insert the lamp holder with the new bulb into the headlamp and turn it clockwise until it stops.

### Replacing the bulb for the side turn signal lights

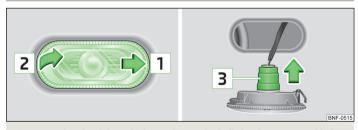


Fig. 128 Left side of the vehicle: Replacing the bulb for the turn signal light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 100 page 157.

- > Slide the direction indicator light in the direction of 1 » Fig. 128 (on the right side of the vehicle mirror).
- > Pry the flashing light from the body in the direction of arrow 2 (on the right side of the vehicle mirror).
- > Remove the bulb holder 3 in the direction of arrow.
- > Remove the faulty bulb from the socket.
- > Insert a new bulb into the socket.
- > Replace the bulb holder.
- Set the side repeater turn signal light with the side facing the rear of the vehicle in the body and lightly press it until the spring on the other side of the side repeater turn signal light latches.

## Replacing the bulb for the fog light

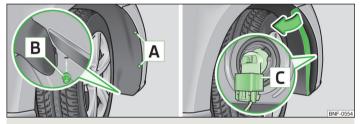


Fig. 129 Changing light bulbs for fog lights



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 157.

- ➤ Use the on board tool to remove screws A » Fig. 129 from the wheel well.
- > Unscrew rivet **B** with a flat, blunt object such as a coin.
- > Push the battery cover in the direction of the arrow .
- > Remove connector C .
- > Turn the connector with the bulb in an **anti-clockwise direction** up to the stop and remove .
- > Turn the connector with the new bulb into the headlight and turn in a clockwise direction as far as the stop.
- > Attach the connector until it clicks firmly into place.

- > Fold the wheel house trim back.
- > Insert the expanding rivet B again and screw in.
- > Firmly tighten the two attachment bolts A with the screwdriver.

## Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

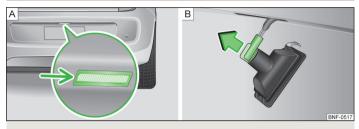


Fig. 130 Changing the bulb for the licence plate light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings 1. on page 157.

- Insert a suitable thin object, e.g. a screwdriver into the recess in the region of the arrow and carefully prise the number plate light out of the bumper » Fig. 130 - A.
- > Remove the lamp from the bumper.
- > Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 130 B.
- > Remove the faulty bulb from the socket.
- > Insert a new bulb into the socket.
- > Insert the bulb holder into the number plate light and turn **clockwise** as far as the stop.
- > Insert the number plate light into the opening of the bumper at the left edge. Lightly press it until the spring latches.

# **CAUTION**

When removing and installing the number plate light and tail light make sure that the paintwork of the vehicle and the tail light are not damaged.

### Tail light

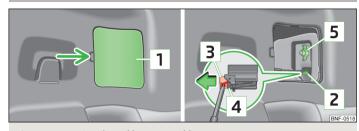


Fig. 131 Removing the tail lamp assembly

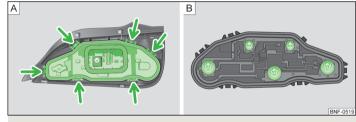


Fig. 132 Tail light assembly: Replacing bulbs



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ... on page 157.

### Removing

- > Open the boot lid.
- Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 45, Folding the rear seats forward.
- > Remove the boot cover » page 48.
- > Pry off cover 1 » Fig. 131 in the arrow area.
- > Below locking edge [3], insert the screwdriver » page 144, Vehicle tool kit and pull the locking on connector [2] in the direction of the arrow.
- > Press the locking mechanism 4 and remove the connector 2.
- > Hold the tail light assembly in the installation position with one hand, and remove the plastic nut 5 with the other.

- > Carefully remove the tail light from the body and place it on a clean, smooth surface.
- > Unlock the bulb holder using the locking latches » Fig. 132 A and remove the holder from the tail lamp.

#### Installing

Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly.

All locking mechanisms must audibly snap into place.

- > Carefully place the tail light assembly in the opening in the body.
- > Hold the tail light assembly with one hand, and attach and tighten the plastic nuts 5 with the other hand.
- Insert the connector 2 on the lamp holder and press the locking mechanism towards the tail light.
- > Fold back the cover 1.
- > Install the luggage compartment cover and close the tailgate.
- > Fold the rear seat backrest back.

#### Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly

- > Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn anti-clockwise up to the stop and remove » Fig. 132 - B.
- Insert a new bulb into the socket and turn clockwise to the stop.

## Technical data

## Technical data

### Vehicle data

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle identification data	161
Dimensions	162
Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type	163

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g., air conditioning system.

### Vehicle identification data

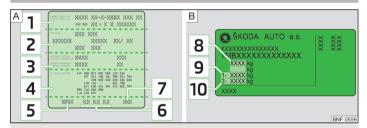


Fig. 133 Vehicle data sticker/type plate



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 161.

#### Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 133 -  $\blacksquare$  is located under the floor in the luggage compartment.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

- 1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Vehicle type, engine power, transmission, paint number
- 3 Engine and gearbox code
- 4 Partial vehicle description
- 5 Operating weight (in kg)
- 6 Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) intra-urban/extra-urban/combined
- 7 CO<sub>2</sub> emission levels combined (in g/km)

The indicated positions 5, 6 and 7 on the vehicle data sticker are only valid for some countries.

### Type plate

The type plate  $\gg$  Fig. 133  $\blacksquare$  is visible at the bottom of the door frame after opening the driver's door.

The type plate lists the following weights:

- 8 Maximum permissible gross weight
- 9 Maximum permissible front axle load
- Maximum permissible rear axle load

### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

#### Engine number

The engine number (three-digit code letter and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

#### Operating weight

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only. This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight » .

The payload consists of the following components:

- > Passengers
- > All items of luggage and other loads
- > Roof load including roof rack system
- > Equipment not included in the operating weight.

# Fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions according to ECE standards and EU directives

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards standard urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

## WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

### Note

- If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.
- The fuel consumption and emission values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.
- Depending on the range of equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values may deviate from the indicated values.

### **Dimensions**



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 161.

#### Vehicle dimensions (mm)

Length	3563
Width	1641/1645 <sup>a)</sup>
Width including exterior mirror	1910
Height	1478/1463 <sup>b)</sup> /1480 <sup>c)</sup>
Clearance	136/121 <sup>b)</sup> /134 <sup>c)</sup>
Wheel base	2420/24210
Track gauge front/rear	1428/1424

a) Valid for vehicles with rear side doors.

b) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

c) Valid for vehicles with CNG operation.

## Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 161.

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

#### 1.0 ltr./44 kW engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )
44/5000-6000	95/3000-4300 3/999	
Performances	MG	ASG
Top speed (km/h)	160/161 <sup>a)</sup>	160
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	14.4	15.3

a) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

### 1.0 ltr./55 kW engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )
55/6200	95/3000-4300 3/999	
Performances	MG	ASG
Top speed (km/h)	171/172 <sup>a)</sup>	171
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	13.2	13.9

a) Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

### 1.0 I/50 kW Engine - CNG

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )
50/6200	90/3000 3/999	
Performances	MG	
Top speed (km/h)	164	
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	16.3	

## Index

Numbers	and	Symbols

**12-volt power socket** \_\_\_\_\_\_ 52

Λ
$\boldsymbol{A}$

A	
Abroad	_
Driving abroad	
Unleaded petrol	
ABS	
Warning light	
Accessories1	Ш
Adjusting	,
Exterior mirrors	
Seat	
Steering wheel	
Adjusting the seats	
Aerial	
Air-conditioning system	
Air outlet vents	5
Airbag	9
Deactivating1	10
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 1	
Deployment	9
Front airbag	
Modifications and damage to the airbag system . Side airbag Head-Thorax1	
Airbag system	
Air conditioning system	
Control elements	
Recirculated air mode	
Air outlet vents	5
Antilock Braking System	
Artificial leather 1	
Ash trav	5

Assist systems	80
ABS	19, 81
City Safe Drive	86
Cruise Control System	83
EDS	81
ESC	18, 80
Parking aid	
START-STOP	
TC	81
Traction Control System (TCS)	19
Visual parking system	
Automated transmission	
Lever control	/1
Automatic gearbox	70
Operational faults Tiptronic	
Automatic load deactivation	/2
Automatic load deactivation	15/
Kick-down	72
Starting-off and driving	
Avaiding damage to the vehicle	/2
Avoiding damage to the vehicle Driving through water	78
Avoiding damage to your vehicle	
Avoiding damage to your venicle	70
В	
Bag hooks	47
Belts	94
Belt tensioners	97
Bonnet	
Closing	128
Opening	128
Boot	
Class N1 vehicles	47
Boot lid	
Automatic locking	29
Brake assist	80
Brake booster	69
Brake fluid	
Changing	
Checking	

Parlan.	
Brakes Brake assist systems	90
Brake booster	
Brake fluid	
Handbrake	
Running in	
Warning lights	
Braking	
Information on braking	69
Breakdown kit	149
Bulbs	
In the tail light	
Replacing	157
Button in the driver's door	
Electrical power windows	30
۲	
Car computer	10
see multifunction display	
Carrier	
Cavity protection	
Central locking button	
Central locking system	
lockunlock	
	20
Changing Brake fluid	124
Engine oil	
Fuses on the underside of the dash panel	154
Wheels	
Changing a wheel	
Follow-up work	
Preliminary work	145
Remove and attaching a wheel	
Charging a vehicle battery	136

Checking

Battery electrolyte level \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 135

Brake fluid \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 133 Coolant \_\_\_\_\_\_ 132 Engine oil \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 131

Oil level	131	Cigarette lighter	52
Windscreen washer fluid	129	Cup holder	51
Children and safety	103	General view	
Child safety		Light	
Side airbag	104	Storage compartments	
Child safety lock		Compartments	53
Child seat		Compressed natural gas	
Classification	105	See CNG	123
ISOFIX		Computer	
on the front passenger seat		see multifunction display	13
TOP TETHER		Coolant	132
Use of child seats		Checking	
Use of ISOFIX child seats	106	Replenishing	
Chrome parts		Warning light	18
refer to Taking care of your vehicle	116	Correct seated position	91
Cigarette lighter		Driver	92
City Safe Drive		Front passenger	92
Warning light		Instructions	92
Cleaning		Rear seats	92
Alcantara		Counter for distance driven	12
Artificial leather		Cruise Control System	
cloths		Cup holder	
Covers of electrically heated seats			
Headlight lenses		D	
Natural leather		В	
Plastic parts		DAY LIGHT	
Wheels		Daytime running light	34
Clock	14	Daytime running light	
Clothes hooks		Deactivating an airbag	
CNG		Decorative films	
Checking		Defrosting rear window	
Fuel gauge		Delayed locking of the boot lid	
Labels		see Boot lid	20
Natural gas as fuel			
Quality		Digital clock	
Refuelling		Dipstick	131
Safe fuel	126	Disconnecting and reconnecting	
Switching from CNG to petrol mode	125	vehicle battery	137
Cockpit		Display	
12-volt power socket	52	Service interval	
Ash tray		Distance driven	12

Door	
Child safety lock	
Closing	_ 2
Opening	
Door opening lever locking of	7
Door opening leverl	
unlocking of	2
Doors	
Emergency locking	_ 2
Driving	
Abroad	_ 7
Driving through water on streets	
Emissions	. 16
Fuel consumption	
Trailer operation  Driving economically	. 11
Economical gear changing	7
Driving through water	
Driving through water	- ′
E	
	_
Economical and environmentally friendly driving Economical driving	_ /
Ballast	7
Driving at full throttle	
Idling	
Looking ahead	_ 7
Regular maintenance	_ 7
Saving energy	_ 7
Short distances	
Tyre inflation pressure	
EDS	_ と
Electrical power windows Button in the driver's door	7
DULLOIT IIT LITE UTIVELS 4001	
Electronic Differential Lock	-
Electronic Differential Lock	
Electronic immobilizer	
Electronic immobilizer	. 6
Electronic immobilizer	6 14

Jump-starting	_ 150
locking of the doors	25
Towing the vehicle	
Tyre repair	148
Unlocking the luggage compartment lid	_ 29
Emergency equipment	
First aid kit	144
lack	144
Vehicle tool kit	144
Warning triangle	144
Emissions	_ 161
Engine	
Running in	73
Engine compartment	
Brake fluid	133
Coolant	132
Overview	
Vehicle battery	
Engine oil	
Capacity	
Changing	
Checking	
Replenishing	_ 131
Specifications	
Warning light	17
Engine revolutions counter	11
Environment	
Environmental compatibility	
Environmentally friendly driving	
ESC	_ /4
Function	90
Warning light	
Warring light	10
F	
•	
Films	_ 116
First aid kit	_ 144
Fog lights	
Footmats	
see footmats	
Front airbag	

ront seats	42
uel	122
Fuel gauge	
refer to Fuel	
Refuelling	
Unleaded petrol	
uel consumption	74
uel gauge	
Fuel gauge	II
uses	15.4
Assignment	
Colour coding	154
Replacing	134
G	
sear changing	
Gear stick	70
iearshift	
Information on the switched gearshift	12
Recommended gear	
ieneral view	
Cockpit	9
Н	
п	
landbrake	70
lazard warning light system	36
lead-Thorax	100
leadlights	
Driving abroad	79
Replacing a bulb	157
lead restraint	45
leating	
Control elements	
Defrost windows	
Exterior mirrors	
operating	
Rear window	
Recommended settingsSeats	
Seats	44

Heating and air-conditioning Hill hold control Horn	80
1	
gnition	68 68 97 97 10
J	
ack acking points Raise vehicle ump-starting	147
K	
Key Starting the engine	68
L	
Lashing eyes Lever Main beam Turn signal Windscreen wipers	34 39
See lever control	
light low beam on and off parking light	33
L <b>ight</b> Cockpit	36, 37

Daytime running light	34
Headlight beam adjustment	
Parking light	36
Replacing bulbs	157
Lighting	
Luggage compartment	46
light on and off	
Lights	33
Fog lights	
Hazard warning light system	
Headlight flasher	
Main beam	34
Rear fog light	35
Turn signal	
Warning lights	
Loading floor	49
Loads	161
Lock	
Central locking system	26
locking	
Vehicle key	22
Locking	
Door opening lever	
Emergency locking	
Remote control	
Locking and unlocking from the inside	
low beam	33
Luggage compartment	
Cover	
Emergency unlocking	
Fixing nets	
Lashing eyes	
Lighting	46
see luggage compartment lid Unlocking the luggage compartment lid	
Variable loading floor	
Luggage compartment cover	
Luggage compartment lid	_ 28, 29
Luggage storage Bag hooks	47

M	
Main beam	34
Maintenance	76
Decorative films	116
Manual gear changing	
see gear changing	70
Materials defect liability	_ 5
MFA	
see multifunction display	. 13
Mirror	
Exterior mirrors	. 41
Mirrors	
Interior mirror	
Vanity	
Mobile phone	
Modes of automated transmission	
Modifications	110
Modifications and technical alterations	
Airbags	
Service	111
Spoiler	112
Trailer operation	
Move & Fun 63	64
Multifunction display Functions	17
Memory	
Operation	
орегиион	. 17
N	
N1	47
Nets	
	70
0	
Dil	125
See Engine oil	131
On-board computer	
see multifunction display	. 13

wipers	3
Operation in winter	
De-icing windows	11
Vehicle battery	
Outside temperature	1
Overview	
Engine compartment	
Warning lights	I
Р	
Paintwork	
See Paintwork care	
Paintwork care	11
Parking	
Parking aid	
Visual parking system	
parking light	
Parking ticket holder	5
Part replacement	11
Passive safety	
Before setting off	
Driving safety	
Safety equipment	
Passive Safety	
Pedals	
Footmats	7
Petrol	
refer to Fuel	12
Polishing the paintwork	
See Taking care of your vehicle	"
Power socket	_
12 V	
Power steering	б
Power windows Button in the driver's door	7
Dutton III the unver \$ 0001	3

R	
Radiator fan	129
Raise vehicle	147
Rear-view mirror	
Exterior mirrors	41
Rear fog light	35
Rear mirror	
Interior mirror	
Rear seats	
Folding forward	45
Rear window heating	37
Rear windows	
Closing	
Opening	
Recirculated air mode	
Recommended gear	12
Refuelling	
Fuel	122
Regulation Headlight beam	34
Remote control	
locking	
Synchronisation process	28
unlocking	
Remote control key	
Replacing the battery	
Repairs and technical alterations	110
Replace	
vehicle battery	13/
Replace vehicle battery	137
Replacing	13/
	150
Bulb for the fog light Bulb for the licence plate light	150 150
Bulb for the side turn signal lights	158
Bulbs	150 157
Bulbs in the tail light	159
Fuses	154
Fuses in the dash panel	156

Fuses in the engine compartment Windscreen wiper blade Windscreen wiper blades	40
Replenishing  Coolant  Engine oil  Windscreen washer fluid	131
Roof rack	
mounting points	50
Roof rack system Roof load	50
Running-in	
The first 1500 km	73
Running in	
Brake pads	
Engine	
Tyres	/4
S	
Safe securing system	26
Safety	90
Child safety	103
Child safety Child safety seats	103
	103 103
Child safety seats	103 103 91
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX	103 103 91 45
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints	103 103 91 45
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER Safety belt	103 91 45 106 107
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER	103 91 45 106 107
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER Safety belt	103 91 45 106 21
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER Safety belt Warning light Saving electrical energy Seals	103 103 91 45 106 107 21 74
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER Safety belt Warning light Saving electrical energy	103 103 91 45 106 107 21 74
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER Safety belt Warning light Saving electrical energy Taking care of your vehicle Seat	103 103 91 45 106 107 21 74
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER Safety belt Warning light Saving electrical energy Taking care of your vehicle Seat Adjusting	103 103 91 45 106 107 21 74 116
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER Safety belt Warning light Saving electrical energy Taking care of your vehicle Adjusting Seat belts	103 103 103 103 105 106 106 107 107 116 116 116 117 118 119 119 119 119 119 119 119 119 119
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER Safety belt Warning light Saving electrical energy Seals Taking care of your vehicle Seat Adjusting Seat belts Belt tensioners	103 103 103 103 104 106 106 107 107 107 116 116 116 117 117 117 117 117 117 11
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER Safety belt Warning light Saving electrical energy Seals Taking care of your vehicle Seat Adjusting Seat belts Belt tensioners Cleaning	103 103 103 91 45 106 107 21 74 116 43 94 97 121
Child safety seats Correct seated position Head restraints ISOFIX TOP TETHER Safety belt Warning light Saving electrical energy Seals Taking care of your vehicle Seat Adjusting Seat belts Belt tensioners	103 103 103 91 45 106 107 21 74 116 43 94 97 121

The physical principle of a frontal collision Warning light	
Warning light Seats	1/
Folding forwards	10
Head restraints	
Heating	
Seats and stowing	
Service	
Service display	
Service intervals	
Settina	
Air conditioning system	6
Heating	
Setting the clock	
Clock	14
Shifting gears	
Driving and saving energy	
Side airbag	_ 100
Sliding/tilting roof	3
Closing	
Opening and tilting	
Operation	
Snow chains	
Spare wheel	
Speedometer	1
Speed symbol	
See Wheels	
Spoiler	
START-STOP	85
Manually activating/deactivating the system _	
Operating conditions of the systemStarting/shutting down the engine	85
3 3	
Starting and stopping the engine with the key	6,
Starting engine Jump-starting	_ 150
Starting the engine	_ 130
Jump-starting	15
Key	68
··-,	

START STOP		Washing		Unleaded petrol	79
Jump-starting	152	Washing by hand	114	unlock	
Warning light	21	Wash system		Central locking system	26
Steering force assistance	66	Wax treatment	115	Unlocking	
Steering wheel	66	Taking care of your vehicles		Remote control	28
Storage	53	Fabric covers	120	Vehicle key	
Storage compartment		TCS	81	Unlocking and locking	22
Bag holder	55	Technical data	161	Useful equipment	
Storage compartment on the driver's side		Tiptronic		-1-1-1	
Storage compartment on the front passenger		see automatic gearbox	72	V	
side	54	Tools	144	•	
Storage compartment with lid on the front pa	as-	TOP TETHER		Vehicle battery	
senger side	54	Towing		Automatic load deactivation	
Storage compartments	53	Towing device		charging	
Meshed pockets on the front seat rests		Towing device		Checking the electrolyte level	
Multimedia holder		Traction Control System		Operation in winter	
Photo holder		144 1 1 1 1 .		Safety instructions	
Storage compartment in the front centre con:			19	Vehicle care	
Storage compartments in front of the rear sea	ats . 56	Transport	45	Alcantara	
Sun visors	38	Luggage compartment		Artificial leather	
Switching off the engine	68	Roof rack system		Cloths	120
		Transporting children safely		Vehicle data sticker	161
Т		Turn signal		Vehicle dimensions	162
•		Two-way radio systems	63	Vehicle height	162
Taking care of the vehicle		Type plate	161	vehicle identification number - VIN	
Natural leather		Tyre load-bearing capacity		Vehicle key	
Seat belts	121	See Wheels	140	locking	22
Taking care of your vehicle		Tyre repair		unlocking	
Automatic car wash system		Check pressure	150	Vehicle length	
Cavity protection	117	Preparations		Vehicles with CNG mode	102
Chrome parts		Sealing and inflating the tyre	149	See CNG	123
Cleaning the wheels		Tyres	138	Vehicles with natural gas mode	123
Decorative films		Inflation pressure	139	See CNG	122
Door lock cylinders		New		Vehicle tool kit	
Headlight lenses		See Wheels			
High-pressure cleaner		Sizes		Vehicle width	
Plastic parts		Tyre wear indicator	139	Visibility	37
Polishing the paintwork				Visors	
Rubber seals	116	U		see Sun visors	
Taking care of the interior				Visual parking system	82
Taking care of your vehicle exterior	115	Underbody protection	118		

W	
Warning lights	16
Warning symbols	
Warning triangle	
Warranty	
Washing	
Automatic car wash system	114
by hand	
Chrome parts	116
High-pressure cleaner	114
Water	
Driving through	78
Wax treatment	
See Taking care of your vehicle	115
Weights	16
Wheel bolts	
Anti-theft wheel bolt	148
Caps	147
Loosening and tightening	146
Wheel rims	138
Wheels	
Bolts	
Changing	
Full trim	
General information	
Load index	
Replacing wheels	
Service life of tyres	
Snow chainsSpare wheel	
Speed symbol	
Storing wheels	
Tyre pressure	
Tyre sizes	
Tyre wear indicator	
Unidirectional tyres	
Winter tyres	
Windows	113
De-icing	11:
See Electrical power windows	30

AP I CITI	
Nindscreen washer fluid	
Checking	129
Replenishing	129
Winter	129
Nindscreen washer system	129
Windscreen washers	
Nindscreen wipers	
Cleaning the windscreen wiper blades	_ 39, 40
Replacing the rear windscreen wiper blade	40
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	39
Windscreen washer fluid	
Nindscreen wipers and washers	38
Ninter operation	143
Snow chains	143
Winter tyres	
Ninter tyres	
See Wheels	143

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment might only be introduced at a later date, or might only be offered in certain markets; information is provided by ŠKODA Partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2013

### ŠKODA Service App - ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Andriod systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

**My dealer** – choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

**Assistance** – contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

**My car** – complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review



### ŠKODA Manual App - Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

- > Navigation through the list of content
- > Classical reading page by page
- > Full text search throughout the whole manual
- **> Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters







### www.skoda-auto.com

## You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked & below.

Work with us - for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze Citigo anglicky 11.2013 S10.5610.08.20 1ST 012 720 AF